

PCTWORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07D 207/34, 233/90, A61K 31/415, C07D 403/14, C12Q 1/68		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/37066 (43) International Publication Date: 27 August 1998 (27.08.98)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/01006 (22) International Filing Date: 21 January 1998 (21.01.98) (30) Priority Data: PCT/US97/03332 20 February 1997 (20.02.97) WO <i>(34) Countries for which the regional or international application was filed:</i> 60/043,444 8 April 1997 (08.04.97) US 60/042,022 16 April 1997 (16.04.97) US 08/837,524 21 April 1997 (21.04.97) US 08/853,522 8 May 1997 (08.05.97) US PCT/US97/12722 21 July 1997 (21.07.97) WO <i>(34) Countries for which the regional or international application was filed:</i> US et al. (63) Related by Continuation (CON) or Continuation-in-Part (CIP) to Earlier Applications US 08/853,522 (CIP) Filed on 8 May 1997 (08.05.97) US 08/837,524 (CIP) Filed on 21 April 1997 (21.04.97) US 08/607,078 (CIP) Filed on 26 February 1996 (26.02.96) US 60/042,022 (CIP) Filed on 16 April 1997 (16.04.97)		(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): CALIFORNIA INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY [US/US]; Pasadena, CA 91125 (US). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): BAIRD, Eldon, E. [US/US]; 255 S. Madison Avenue #5, Pasadena, CA 91101 (US). DERVAN, Peter, B. [US/US]; 1235 St. Albans Road, San Marino, CA 91108 (US). (74) Agent: McDONNELL, John, J.; McDonnell Boehnen Hulbert & Berghoff, 300 South Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60606 (US). (81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GW, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published With international search report.	
(54) Title: IMPROVED POLYAMIDES FOR BINDING IN THE MINOR GROOVE OF DOUBLE STRANDED DNA			
(57) Abstract The invention encompasses improved polyamides for binding to specific nucleotide sequences in the minor groove of double stranded DNA. The 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole/N-methylpyrrole carboxamide pair specifically recognizes the T.A base pair, while the N-methylpyrrole/3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole pair recognizes A.T nucleotide pairs. Similarly, an N-methylimidazole/N-methylpyrrole carboxamide pair specifically recognizes the G.C nucleotide pair, and the N-methylpyrrole/N-methylimidazole carboxamide pair recognizes the C.G nucleotide pair.			

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

IMPROVED POLYAMIDES FOR BINDING IN THE MINOR GROOVE OF DOUBLE STRANDED DNA

5 The U.S. Government has certain rights in this invention pursuant to Grant Nos. GM 26453, 27681 and 47530 awarded by the National Institute of Health.

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

10 This application is a continuation-in-part of PCT/US97/03332 filed February 20, 1997, Serial No. 08/853,522 filed May 8, 1997 and PCT/US 97/12722 filed July 21, 1997 which are continuation-in-part applications of Serial No. 08/837,524, filed April 21, 1997, Serial No. 08/607,078, filed February 26, 1996, provisional application Serial No. 60/042,022, filed April 16, 1997 and provisional application Serial No. 60/043,444, filed April 8, 1997.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

20 This invention relates to polyamides which bind to predetermined sequences in the minor groove of double stranded DNA.

Description of the Related Art

25 The design of synthetic ligands that read the information stored in the DNA double helix has been a long standing goal of chemistry. Cell-permeable small molecules which target predetermined DNA sequences are useful for the regulation of gene-expression. Oligodeoxynucleotides that recognize the major groove of double-helical DNA via triple-helix formation bind to a broad range of sequences with high affinity and specificity. Although
30 oligonucleotides and their analogs have been shown to interfere with gene expression, the triple helix approach is limited to purine tracks and suffers from poor cellular uptake. The development of pairing rules for minor groove binding polyamides derived from N-methylpyrrole (Py) and N-methylimidazole (Im) amino acids provides another code to control sequence specificity. An Im/Py pair distinguishes G•C from C•G and both of these from A•T
35 or T•A base pairs. Wade, W.S., Mrksich, M. & Dervan, P.B. describes the design of peptides that bind in the minor groove of DNA at 5'-(A,T)G(A,T)C(A,T)-3' sequences by a dimeric side-by-side motif. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **114**, 8783-8794 (1992); Mrksich, M. *et al.* describes antiparallel side-by-side motif for sequence specific-recognition in the minor groove of DNA by the designed peptide 1-methylimidazole-2-carboxamidenetropsin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*
40 **89**, 7586-7590 (1992); Trauger, J.W., Baird, E. E. Dervan, P.B. describes the recognition of DNA by designed ligands at subnanomolar concentrations. *Nature* **382**, 559-561 (1996). A

Py/Py pair specifies A•T from G•C but does not distinguish A•T from T•A. Pelton, J.G. & Wemmer, D.E. describes the structural characterization of a 2-1 distamycin A-d(CGCAAATTTGGC) complex by two-dimensional NMR. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**, 5723-5727 (1989); White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P.B. Describes the effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* **35**, 6147-6152 (1996); White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the pairing rules for recognition in the minor groove of DNA by pyrrole-imidazole polyamides. *Chem. & Biol.* **4**, 569-578 (1997); White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P.B. describes the 5'-3' N-C orientation preference for polyamide binding in the minor groove. In order to break this degeneracy, a new aromatic amino acid, 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole (Hp) incorporated into a polyamide and paired opposite Py, has been found to discriminate A•T from T•A. The replacement of a single hydrogen atom on the pyrrole with a hydroxy group in a Hp/Py pair regulates affinity and specificity of a polyamide by an order of magnitude. Utilizing Hp together with Py and Im in polyamides to form four aromatic amino acid pairs (Im/Py, Py/Im, Hp/Py, and Py/Hp) provides a code to distinguish all four Watson-Crick base pairs in the minor groove of DNA.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention encompasses improved polyamides for binding to the minor groove of double stranded ("duplex") DNA. The polyamides are in the form of a hairpin comprising two groups of at least three consecutive carboxamide residues, the two groups covalently linked by an aliphatic amino acid residue, preferably γ -aminobutyric acid or 2,4 diaminobutyric acid, the consecutive carboxamide residues of the first group pairing in an antiparallel manner with the consecutive carboxamide residues of the second group in the minor groove of double stranded DNA. The improvement relates to the inclusion of a binding pair of Hp/Py carboxamides in the polyamide to bind to a T•A base pair in the minor groove of double stranded DNA or Py/Hp carboxamide binding pair in the polyamide to bind to an A•T base pair in the minor groove of double stranded DNA. The improved polyamides have at least three consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least three DNA base pairs in the minor groove of a duplex DNA sequence that has at least one A•T or T•A DNA base pair, the improvement comprising selecting a Hp/Py carboxamide pair to correspond to a T•A base pair in the minor groove or a Py/Hp carboxamide pair to bind to an A•T DNA base pair in the minor groove. Preferably the binding of the carboxamide pairs to the DNA base pairs modulates the expression of a gene.

In one preferred embodiment, the polyamide includes at least four consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least four base pairs in a duplex DNA sequence. In another preferred embodiment, the polyamide includes at least five consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least five base pairs in a duplex DNA sequence. In yet another preferred

embodiment, the polyamide includes at least six consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least six base pairs in a duplex DNA sequence. In one preferred embodiment, the improved polyamides have four carboxamide binding pairs that will distinguish A•T, T•A, C•G and G•C base pairs in the minor groove of a duplex DNA sequence. The duplex DNA sequence can be a regulatory sequence, such as a promoter sequence or an enhancer sequence, or a gene sequence, such as a coding sequence or a non-coding sequence. Preferably, the duplex DNA sequence is a promoter sequence.

The preparation and the use of polyamides for binding in the minor groove of double stranded DNA are extensively described in the art. This invention is an improvement of the existing technology that uses 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole to provide carboxamide binding pairs for DNA binding polyamides.

The invention encompasses polyamides having γ -aminobutyric acid or a substituted γ -aminobutyric acid to form a hairpin with a member of each carboxamide pairing on each side of it. Preferably the substituted γ -aminobutyric acid is a chiral substituted γ -aminobutyric acid such as (R)-2,4-diaminobutyric acid. In addition, the polyamides may contain an aliphatic amino acid residue, preferably a β -alanine residue, in place of a non-Hp carboxamide. The β -alanine residue is represented in formulas as β . The β -alanine residue becomes a member of a carboxamide binding pair. The invention further includes the substitution as a β • β binding pair for non-Hp containing binding pair. Thus, binding pairs in addition to the Hp/Py and Py/Hp are Im/ β , β /Im, Py/ β , β /Py, and β / β .

The polyamides of the invention can have additional moieties attached covalently to the polyamide. Preferably the additional moieties are attached as substituents at the amino terminus of the polyamide, the carboxy terminus of the polyamide, or at a chiral (R)-2,4-diaminobutyric acid residue. Suitable additional moieties include a detectable labeling group such as a dye, biotin or a hapten. Other suitable additional moieties are DNA reactive moieties that provide for sequence specific cleavage of the duplex DNA.

Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1 illustrates the structure of polyamide 1, 2, and 3.

Figure 2 illustrates the pairing of polyamides to DNA base pairs.

Figure 3 illustrates the DNase footprint titration of compounds 2 and 3.

Figure 4 illustrates a list of the structures of representative Hp containing polyamides.

Figure 5 illustrates the synthesis of a protected Hp monomer for solid phase synthesis.

Figure 6 illustrates the solid phase synthesis of polyamide 2.

Figure 7 illustrates the ¹H-NMR characterization of polyamide 2.

Figure 8 illustrates the Mass spectral characterization of polyamide 2.

Figure 9 illustrates ¹H-NMR characterization of synthesis purity.

Figure 10 illustrates DNaseI footprint titration experiment.

Figure 11 illustrates the synthesis of bifunctional conjugate of polyamide 2.

5 Figure 12 illustrates affinity cleaving evidence for oriented hairpin formation.

Figure 13 illustrates increased sequence specificity of Hp/Py containing polyamides.

Figure 14 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGTNNW-3' sites.

Figure 15 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGANNW-3' sites.

Figure 16 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGGNNW-3' sites.

10 Figure 17 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGCNNW-3' sites.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within this application, unless otherwise stated, definitions of the terms and illustration
15 of the techniques of this application may be found in any of several well-known references such
as: Sambrook, J., *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor
Laboratory Press (1989); Goeddel, D., *ed.*, *Gene Expression Technology, Methods in
Enzymology*, **185**, Academic Press, San Diego, CA (1991); "Guide to Protein Purification" in
Deutscher, M.P., *ed.*, *Methods in Enzymology*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA (1989); Innis, *et*
20 *al.*, *PCR Protocols: A Guide to Methods and Applications*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA
(1990); Freshney, R.I., *Culture of Animal Cells: A Manual of Basic Technique*, 2nd Ed., Alan
Liss, Inc. New York, NY (1987); Murray, E.J., *ed.*, *Gene Transfer and Expression Protocols*,
pp. 109-128, The Humana Press Inc., Clifton, NJ and Lewin, B., *Genes VI*, Oxford University
Press, New York (1997).

25

For the purposes of this application, a *promoter* is a regulatory sequence of DNA that is
involved in the binding of RNA polymerase to initiate transcription of a gene. A *gene* is a
segment of DNA involved in producing a peptide, polypeptide or protein, including the coding
region, non-coding regions preceding ("leader") and following ("trailer") the coding region, as
30 well as intervening non-coding sequences ("introns") between individual coding segments
("exons"). Coding refers to the representation of amino acids, start and stop signals in a three
base "triplet" code. Promoters are often upstream ("5' to") the transcription initiation site of
the corresponding gene. Other regulatory sequences of DNA in addition to promoters are
known, including sequences involved with the binding of transcription factors, including
35 response elements that are the DNA sequences bound by inducible factors. Enhancers comprise

yet another group of regulatory sequences of DNA that can increase the utilization of promoters, and can function in either orientation (5'-3' or 3'-5') and in any location (upstream or downstream) relative to the promoter. Preferably, the regulatory sequence has a positive activity, i.e., binding of an endogeneous ligand (e.g. a transcription factor) to the regulatory sequence increases transcription, thereby resulting in increased expression of the corresponding target gene. In such a case, interference with transcription by binding a polyamide to a regulatory sequence would reduce or abolish expression of a gene.

The promoter may also include or be adjacent to a regulatory sequence known in the art as a *silencer*. A silencer sequence generally has a negative regulatory effect on expression of the gene. In such a case, expression of a gene may be increased directly by using a polyamide to prevent binding of a factor to a silencer regulatory sequence or indirectly, by using a polyamide to block transcription of a factor to a silencer regulatory sequence.

It is to be understood that the polyamides of this invention bind to double stranded DNA in a sequence specific manner. The function of a segment of DNA of a given sequence, such as 5'-TATAAA-3', depends on its position relative to other functional regions in the DNA sequence. In this case, if the sequence 5'-TATAAA-3' on the coding strand of DNA is positioned about 30 base pairs upstream of the transcription start site, the sequence forms part of the promoter region (Lewin, *Genes VI*, pp. 831-835). On the other hand, if the sequence 5'-TATAAA-3' is downstream of the transcription start site in a coding region and in proper register with the reading frame, the sequence encodes the tyrosyl and lysyl amino acid residues (Lewin, *Genes VI*, pp. 213-215).

While not being held to one hypothesis, it is believed that the binding of the polyamides of this invention modulate gene expression by altering the binding of DNA binding proteins, such as RNA polymerase, transcription factors, TBF, TFIIB and other proteins. The effect on gene expression of polyamide binding to a segment of double stranded DNA is believed to be related to the function, e.g., promoter, of that segment of DNA.

It is to be understood by one skilled in the art that the improved polyamides of the present invention may bind to any of the above-described DNA sequences or any other sequence having a desired effect upon expression of a gene. In addition, U.S. Patent No.

5,578,444 describes numerous promoter targeting sequences from which base pair sequences for targeting an improved polyamide of the present invention may be identified.

It is generally understood by those skilled in the art that the basic structure of DNA in a living cell includes both *major* and a *minor groove*. For the purposes of describing the present invention, the *minor groove* is the narrow groove of DNA as illustrated in common molecular biology references such as Lewin, B., *Genes VI*, Oxford University Press, New York (1997).

To affect gene expression in a cell, which may include causing an increase or a decrease in gene expression, a effective quantity of one or more polyamide is contacted with the cell and internalized by the cell. The cell may be contacted *in vivo* or *in vitro*. Effective extracellular concentrations of polyamides that can modulate gene expression range from about 10 nanomolar to about 1 micromolar. Gottesfeld, J.M., *et al.*, *Nature* 387 202-205 (1997). To determine effective amounts and concentrations of polyamides *in vitro*, a suitable number of cells is plated on tissue culture plates and various quantities of one or more polyamide are added to separate wells. Gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored in the cells or medium by detecting the amount of the protein gene product present as determined by various techniques utilizing specific antibodies, including ELISA and western blot. Alternatively, gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored by detecting the amount of messenger RNA present as determined by various techniques, including northern blot and RT-PCR.

Similarly, to determine effective amounts and concentrations of polyamides for *in vivo* administration, a sample of body tissue or fluid, such as plasma, blood, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, saliva, or biopsy of skin, muscle, liver, brain or other appropriate tissue source is analyzed. Gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored by detecting the amount of the protein gene product present as determined by various techniques utilizing specific antibodies, including ELISA and western blot. Alternatively, gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored by the detecting the amount of messenger RNA present as determined by various techniques, including northern blot and RT-PCR.

The polyamides of this invention may be formulated into diagnostic and therapeutic compositions for *in vivo* or *in vitro* use. Representative methods of formulation may be found

in *Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy*, 19th ed., Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA (1995).

For *in vivo* use, the polyamides may be incorporated into a physiologically acceptable pharmaceutical composition that is administered to a patient in need of treatment or an animal for medical or research purposes. The polyamide composition comprises pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, adjuvants, stabilizers, and vehicles. The composition may be in solid, liquid, gel, or aerosol form. The polyamide composition of the present invention may be administered in various dosage forms orally, parentally, by inhalation spray, rectally, or topically. The term parenteral as used herein includes, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, intrasternal, infusion techniques or intraperitoneally.

The selection of the precise concentration, composition, and delivery regimen is influenced by, *inter alia*, the specific pharmacological properties of the particular selected compound, the intended use, the nature and severity of the condition being treated or diagnosed, the age, weight, gender, physical condition and mental acuity of the intended recipient as well as the route of administration. Such considerations are within the purview of the skilled artisan. Thus, the dosage regimen may vary widely, but can be determined routinely using standard methods.

Polyamides of the present invention are also useful for detecting the presence of double stranded DNA of a specific sequence for diagnostic or preparative purposes. The sample containing the double stranded DNA can be contacted by polyamide linked to a solid substrate, thereby isolating DNA comprising a desired sequence. Alternatively, polyamides linked to a suitable detectable marker, such as biotin, a hapten, a radioisotope or a dye molecule, can be contacted by a sample containing double stranded DNA.

The design of bifunctional sequence specific DNA binding molecules requires the integration of two separate entities: recognition and functional activity. Polyamides that specifically bind with subnanomolar affinity to the minor groove of a predetermined sequence of double stranded DNA are linked to a functional molecule, providing the corresponding bifunctional conjugates useful in molecular biology, genomic sequencing, and human medicine. Polyamides of this invention can be conjugated to a variety of functional molecules, which can be independently chosen from but is not limited to arylboronic acids, biotins, polyhistidines

comprised from about 2 to 8 amino acids, haptens to which an antibody binds, solid phase supports, oligodeoxynucleotides, N-ethylnitrosourea, fluorescein, bromoacetamide, iodoacetamide, DL- α -lipoic acid, acridine, captothesin, pyrene, mitomycin, texas red, anthracene, anthrinilic acid, avidin, DAPI, isosulfan blue, malachite green, psoralen, ethyl red, 4-(psoraen-8-yloxy)-butyrate, tartaric acid, (+)- α -tocopheral, psoralen, EDTA, methidium, acridine, Ni(II)•Gly-Gly-His, TO, Dansyl, pyrene, N-bromoacetamide, and gold particles. Such bifunctional polyamides are useful for DNA affinity capture, covalent DNA modification, oxidative DNA cleavage, DNA photocleavage. Such bifunctional polyamides are useful for DNA detection by providing a polyamide linked to a detectable label. Detailed instructions for synthesis of such bifunctional polyamides can be found in copending U.S. provisional application 60/043,444, the teachings of which are incorporated by reference.

DNA complexed to a labeled polyamide can then be determined using the appropriate detection system as is well known to one skilled in the art. For example, DNA associated with a polyamide linked to biotin can be detected by a streptavidin / alkaline phosphatase system.

The present invention also describes a diagnostic system, preferably in kit form, for assaying for the presence of the double stranded DNA sequence bound by the polyamide of this invention in a body sample, such brain tissue, cell suspensions or tissue sections, or body fluid samples such as CSF, blood, plasma or serum, where it is desirable to detect the presence, and preferably the amount, of the double stranded DNA sequence bound by the polyamide in the sample according to the diagnostic methods described herein.

The diagnostic system includes, in an amount sufficient to perform at least one assay, a specific polyamide as a separately packaged reagent. Instructions for use of the packaged reagent(s) are also typically included. As used herein, the term "package" refers to a solid matrix or material such as glass, plastic (e.g., polyethylene, polypropylene or polycarbonate), paper, foil and the like capable of holding within fixed limits a polyamide of the present invention. Thus, for example, a package can be a glass vial used to contain milligram quantities of a contemplated polyamide or it can be a microliter plate well to which microgram quantities of a contemplated polypamide have been operatively affixed, i.e., linked so as to be capable of being bound by the target DNA sequence. "Instructions for use" typically include a tangible expression describing the reagent concentration or at least one assay method parameter such as the relative amounts of reagent and sample to be admixed, maintenance time

periods for reagent or sample admixtures, temperature, buffer conditions and the like. A diagnostic system of the present invention preferably also includes a detectable label and a detecting or indicating means capable of signaling the binding of the contemplated polyamide of the present invention to the target DNA sequence. As noted above, numerous detectable labels, such as biotin, and detecting or indicating means, such as enzyme-linked (direct or indirect) streptavidin, are well known in the art.

Figure 1 shows representative structures of polyamides. ImImPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp (1), ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp (2), and ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp (3). (Hp = 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole, Im = N-methylimidazole, Py = N-methylpyrrole, β = β -alanine, γ = γ -aminobutyric acid, Dp = Dimethylaminopropylamide). Polyamides were synthesized by solid phase methods using Boc-protected 3-methoxypyrrole, imidazole, and pyrrole aromatic amino acids, cleaved from the support by aminolysis, deprotected with sodium thiophenoxide, and purified by reversed phase HPLC. Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. The identity and purity of the polyamides were verified by ^1H NMR, analytical HPLC, and matrix-assisted laser-desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS-monoisotopic): 1 1223.6 (1223.6 calculated), 2 1239.6 (1239.6 calculated); 3 1239.6 (1239.6 calculated).

Figure 2 illustrates binding models for polyamides 1-3 in complex with 5'-TGGTCA-3' and 5'-TGGACA-3' (A•T and T•A in fourth position highlighted). Filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid, the diamond represents β -alanine, and the + represents the positively charged dimethylaminopropylamide tail group.

Figure 3 shows quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments with polyamides 2 and 3 on the 3' ^{32}P labeled 250-bp pJK6 *EcoRI/PvuII* restriction fragment. Lane 1, intact DNA; lanes 2-11 DNase I digestion products in the presence of 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 2, 1, 0.5, 0.2, 0.1 nM polyamide, respectively; lane 12, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lane 13, adenine-specific chemical sequencing. Iverson, B. L. & Dervan, P. B. describes an adenine-specific DNA chemical sequencing reaction. *Methods Enzymol.* **15**, 7823-7830 (1987).

All reactions were done in a total volume of 400 μ L. A polyamide stock solution or H₂O was added to an assay buffer containing radiolabeled restriction fragment, with the final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 4-12 h at 22 °C before initiation of footprinting reactions.

5 Footprinting reactions, separation of cleavage products, and data analysis were carried out as described. White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. Effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* 35, 6147-6152 (1996).

10 Figure 4 shows the structure and equilibrium dissociation constant for numerous compounds of the present invention. Polyamides are shown in complex with their respective match site. Filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole (Im) and pyrrole (Py) rings, respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole (Hp), the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid (γ), the diamond represents

15 β -alanine (β), and the + represents the positively charged dimethylaminopropylamide tail group (Dp). The equilibrium dissociation constants are the average values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. The standard deviation for each set is less than 15% of the reported number. Assays were carried out in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂ at pH 7.0 and 22°C.

20 Figure 5 shows the synthetic scheme for 3-O-methyl-N-Boc protected pyrrole-2-carboxylate. The hydroxypyrrole monoester can be prepared in 0.5 kg quantity using published procedures on enlarged scale.

25 Figure 6 shows the solid phase synthetic scheme for ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp starting from commercially available Boc- β -Pam-Resin: (i) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (ii) Boc-Py-OBt, DIEA, DMF; (iii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (iv) Boc-Py-OBt, DIEA, DMF; (v) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (vi) Boc-3-OMe-Py-OH, HBTU, DMF, DIEA; (vii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (viii) Boc-Im-OH, DCC, HOBt; (ix) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH;

30 (x) Boc- γ -aminobutyric acid, DIEA, DMF; (xi) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xii) Boc-Py-OBt, DIEA, DMF; (xiii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xiv) Boc-Py-OBt, DMF, DIEA; (xv) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xvi) Boc-Im-OH, DCC, HOBt (xvii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xviii) imidazole-2-carboxylic acid, HBTU, DIEA; (xiv) dimethylaminopropylamine, 55 °C, 18h. Purification by reversed phase HPLC provides ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp. (Op = 3-methoxypyrrole). Treatment of the 3-methoxypyrrole polyamide with thiophenol, NaH, DMF, at 100 °C for 120 min provides polyamide 2 after reverse phase HPLC purification.

35

Figure 7 shows the aromatic region from 7-11 ppm for the ^1H -NMR spectrum determined at 300 MHz for ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp and ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp. This region of the spectrum may be used to determine compound identity and purity.

Figure 8 shows the MALDI-TOF mass spectrum determined in positive ion mode with a monoisotopic detector for the polyamides for ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp and ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp. This spectrum may be used to determine compound identity and purity.

Figure 9 shows the methyl group region from 3.5-4.0 ppm for the ^1H -NMR spectrum determined at 300 MHz for ImPyPy- γ -OpPyPy- β -Dp and ImPyPy- γ -HpPyPy- β -Dp. This region of the spectrum may be used to directly follow the progress for conversion of 3-methoxypyrrole to 3-hydroxypyrrole.

Fig. 10 shows quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments with the polyamides ImPyPy- γ -PyHpPy- β -Dp and ImHpPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp on the 3'- ^{32}P labeled 370-bp pDEH1 *EcoRI/PvuII* restriction fragment. Intact lane, labeled restriction fragment no polyamide or DNase I added; lanes 1-10, DNase I digestion products in the presence of 10 μM , 5 μM , 2 μM , 1 μM , 500 nM, 200 nM, 100 nM, 50 nM, 20 nM, 10 nM ImPyPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp, respectively or 1 μM , 500 nM, 200 nM, 100 nM, 50 nM, 20 nM, 10 nM, 5 nM, 2 nM, 1 nM ImHpPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp, respectively; DNase I lane, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; A lane, adenine-specific chemical sequencing. Iverson, B. L. & Dervan, P. B. describes an adenine-specific DNA chemical sequencing reaction. *Methods Enzymol.* 15, 7823-7830 (1987). All reactions were done in a total volume of 40 μL . A polyamide stock solution or H_2O was added to an assay buffer containing radiolabeled restriction fragment, with the final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl_2 , 5 mM CaCl_2 , pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 4-12 h at 22 $^\circ\text{C}$ before initiation of footprinting reactions. Footprinting reactions, separation of cleavage products, and data analysis were carried out as described. White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. describe the pairing rules for recognition in the minor groove of DNA by pyrrole-imidazole polyamides. *Chemistry & Biology* 4, 569-578 (1997).

Figure 11 shows the synthesis of a bifunctional polyamide which incorporates the Hp/Py pair. Treatment of a sample of ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Pam-resin (see Figure 6) with 3,3'-diamino-*N*-methyldipropylamine, 55 $^\circ\text{C}$, 18 h followed by reverse phase HPLC purification provides the Op polyamide with a free primary amine group which can be coupled to an activated carboxylic acid derivative. Treatment with (i) EDTA-dianhydride, DMSO/NMP, DIEA, 55 $^\circ\text{C}$; (ii) 0.1M NaOH, followed by reverse phase HPLC purification provides the Op-Py-Im-polyamide-EDTA conjugate. Treatment of the 3-methoxypyrrole polyamide with

thiophenol, NaH, DMF, at 100 °C for 120 min provides polyamide **2** after reverse phase HPLC purification.

Figure 12 shows the determination of the binding orientation of hairpin polyamides ImImPyPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPyPy-β-Dp-EDTA•Fe(II) **2-E•Fe(II)** and ImImHpPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-EDTA•Fe(II) **3-E•Fe(II)** by affinity cleaving footprint titration. Top and bottom left: Affinity cleavage experiments on a 3' ³²P labeled 250-bp pJK6 *EcoRI*/*Pvu* II restriction fragment. The 5'-TGGACA-3' and 5'-TGGTCA-3' sites are shown on the right side of the autoradiogram. Top left: lane 1, adenine-specific chemical sequencing reaction; lanes 2-6, 6.5 μM, 1.0 μM, 100 nM, 10 nM, 1 nM polyamide **2-E•Fe(II)**; lane 7, intact restriction fragment, no polyamide added. Bottom left: lane 1, A reaction; lanes 2-6, 8.5 μM, 1.0 μM, 100 nM, 10 nM, 1 nM polyamide **3-E•Fe(II)**; lane 7, intact DNA. All reactions were carried out in a total volume of 40 μL. A stock solution of polyamide or H₂O was added to a solution containing 20 kcpm labeled restriction fragment, affording final solution conditions of 25 mM Tris-Acetate, 20 mM NaCl, 100 μM/ bp calf thymus DNA, at pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for a minimum of 4 h at 22°K before initiation of reactions. Affinity cleavage reactions were carried out as described White, S., Baird, E.E. & Dervan, P.B. Effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* **35**, 6147-6152 (1996). Top and bottom right: Affinity cleavage patterns of **2-E•Fe(II)** and **3-E•Fe(II)** at 100 nM bound to 5'-TGGACA-3' and 5'-TGGTCA-3'. Bar heights are proportional to the relative cleavage intensities at each base pair. Shaded and nonshaded circles denote imidazole and pyrrole carboxamides, respectively. Nonshaded diamonds represent the β-alanine moiety. A curved line represents the γ-aminobutyric acid, and the + represents the positively charged dimethylaminopropylamide tail group. The boxed Fe denotes the EDTA•Fe(II) cleavage moiety.

Figure 13 shows quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments with the polyamides ImPyPyPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPyPy-β-Dp and ImHpPyPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPyPy-β-Dp on the 3' ³²P labeled 252-bp pJK7 *EcoRI*/*Pvu* II restriction fragment. For ImPyPyPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPyPy-β-Dp gel (left): lane 1, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lanes 2-18, DNase I digestion products in the presence of 1.0 μM, 500 nM, 200, 100, 65, 40, 25, 15, 10, 6.5, 4.0, 2.5, 1.5, 1.0, 0.5, 0.2, 0.1 nM polyamide; lane 19, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lane 20, intact restriction fragment; lane 21, guanine-specific chemical sequencing reaction; lane 22, adenine-specific chemical sequencing reaction. For ImHpPyPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPyPy-β-Dp gel (right): lane 1, intact DNA; lane 2, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lanes 3-19, 1.0 μM, 500 nM, 200, 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 2, 1, 0.5, 0.2, 0.1, 0.05, 0.01, 0.005, 0.001 nM polyamide; lane 20, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lane 21, A reaction. All reactions were done in a total volume of 400

μL. A polyamide stock solution or H₂O was added to an assay buffer containing radiolabeled restriction fragment, with the final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 4-12 h at 22°C before initiation of footprinting reactions. Footprinting reactions, separation of cleavage products, and data analysis were carried as described. White, S., Baird, E.E. & Dervan, P.B. Effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* **35**, 6147-6152 (1996).

Fig. 14 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the -NH-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CONH- hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGTNNW-3', where the 5'-GTNN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d (W = A or T, N = A, G, C, or T). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGTNNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

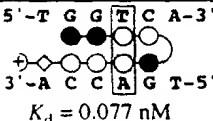
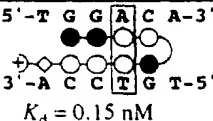
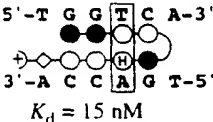
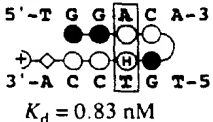
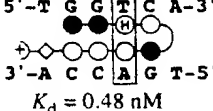
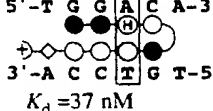
Fig. 15 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the -NH-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CONH- hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGANNW-3', where the 5'-GANN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d (W = A or T, N = A, G, C, or T). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGANNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Fig. 16 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CONH}-$ hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGGNNW-3', where the 5'-GGNN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d (W = A or T, N = A, G, C, or T). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGGNNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Fig. 17 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CONH}-$ hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGCNNW-3', where the 5'-GCNN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d (W = A or T, N = A, G, C, or T). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGCNNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Four-ring polyamide subunits, covalently coupled to form eight-ring hairpin structures, bind specifically to 6-bp target sequences at subnanomolar concentrations. Trauger, J.W., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P.B. describe the recognition of DNA by designed ligands at subnanomolar concentrations. *Nature* **382**, 559-561 (1996); Swalley, S. E., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describe the discrimination of 5'-GGGG-3', 5'-GCGC-3', and 5'-GGCC-3' sequences in the minor groove of DNA by eight-ring hairpin polyamides. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **119**, 6953-6961 (1997). The DNA-binding affinities of three eight-ring hairpin polyamides shown in Figure 1 as compound 1, 2, and 3 containing pairings of Im/Py, Py/Im opposite G•C,

C•G and either Py/Py, Hp/Py, or Py/Py at a common single point opposite T•A and A•T has been determined. Equilibrium dissociation constants (K_d) for ImImPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp 1, ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp 2, ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp 3 of Figure 1 are shown in Table 1. Brenowitz, M., Senear, D. F., Shea, M. A. & Ackers, G. K. describe a quantitative DNase footprint titration method for studying protein-DNA interactions. *Methods Enzymol.* **130**, 132-181 (1986); The K_d values were determined by quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments: on a 3' 32 P-labeled 250-bp DNA fragment containing the target sites, 5'-TGGACA-3' and 5'-TGGTCA-3' which differ by a single A•T base pair in the fourth position. The DNase footprint gels are shown in Figure 3.

TABLE 1 Equilibrium dissociation constants*			
Polyamide†	5'-TGGTCA-3'	5'-TGGACA-3'	K_{rel}^\ddagger
1 Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.077 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d = 0.15 \text{ nM}$	2.0
2 Py/Py	 $K_d = 15 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d = 0.83 \text{ nM}$	0.06
3 Hp/Py	 $K_d = 0.48 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d = 37 \text{ nM}$	77

*The reported dissociation constants are the average values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. The standard deviation for each data set is less than 15% of the reported number. Assays were carried out in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂ at pH 7.0 and 22 °C.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the fourth position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'-TGGACA-3') / K_d(5'-TGGTCA-3')$.

Based on the pairing rules for polyamide-DNA complexes both of these sequences are a match for control polyamide 1 which places a Py/Py pairing opposite A•T and T•A at both sites. It was determined that in polyamide 1 (Py/Py) binds to 5'-TGGTCA-3' and 5'-TGGACA-3' within a factor of 2 ($K_d = 0.077$ or 0.15 nM respectively). In contrast, polyamide 2 (Py/Py) binds to 5'-TGGTCA-3' and 5'-TGGACA-3' with dissociation constants which differ by a factor of 18 ($K_d = 15 \text{ nM}$ and 0.83 nM respectively). By reversing the pairing in polyamide 3 (Hp/Py) the dissociation constants differ again in the opposite direction by a factor of 77 ($K_d = 0.48 \text{ nM}$ and 37 nM respectively). Control experiments performed on separate DNA fragments; reveal that neither a 5'-TGGGCA-3' or a 5'-TGGCCA-3' site is bound by polyamide 2 or 3 at concentrations $\leq 100 \text{ nM}$, indicating that the Hp/Py and Py/Py ring pairings do not bind opposite G•C or C•G. The A•T vs. T•A discrimination is achieved preferably when the two neighboring base pairs are G•C and C•G (GTC vs. GAC).

The specificity of polyamides **2** and **3** for sites which differ by a single A•T/T•A base pair results from small chemical changes. Replacing the Py/Py pair in **1** with a Py/Hp pairing as in **2**, a single substitution of C3-OH for C3-H, destabilizes interaction with 5'-TGGICA-3' by 191-fold, a free energy difference of 3.1 kcal mol⁻¹. Interaction of **2** with 5'-TGGACA-3' is destabilized only 6-fold relative to **1**, a free energy difference of 1.1 kcal mol⁻¹. Similarly, replacing the Py/Py pair in **1** with Hp/Py as in **3** destabilizes interaction with 5'-TGGACA-3' by 252-fold, a free energy difference of 3.2 kcal mol⁻¹. Interaction of **3** with 5'-TGGICA-3' is destabilized only 6-fold relative to **1**, a free energy difference of 1.0 kcal mol⁻¹.

The polyamides of this invention provide for coded targeting of predetermined DNA sequences with affinity and specificity comparable to sequence-specific DNA binding proteins. Hp, Im, and Py polyamides complete the minor groove recognition code using three aromatic amino acids which combine to form four ring pairings (Im/Py, Py/Im, Hp/Py, and Py/Hp) which complement the four Watson-Crick base pairs, as shown in TABLE 2. There are a possible 240 four base pair sequences which contain at least 1 A•T or T•A base pair and therefore can advantageously use an Hp/Py, or Py/Hp carboxamide binding. Polyamides binding to any of these sequences can be designed in accordance with the code of TABLE 2.

TABLE 2 Pairing code for minor groove recognition*

Pair	G•C	C•G	T•A	A•T
Im/Py	+	-	-	-
Py/Im	-	+	-	-
Hp/Py	-	-	+	-
Py/Hp	-	-	-	+

* favored (+), disfavored (-)

For certain G•C rich sequences the affinity of polyamide•DNA complexes may be enhanced by substitution of an Im/β pair for Im/Py at G•C and β/Im for Py/Im at C•G. At A•T and T•A base pairs, either a Py/β, β/Py, and β/β may be used. The alternate aliphatic/aromatic amino acid pairing code is described in Table 3.

5

TABLE 3 Aliphatic / Aromatic substitution for ring pairings*

Pair	Substitution
Im/Py	Im/β
Py/Im	β/Im
Hp/Py	Py/β, β/Py, Hp/β, β/β
Py/Hp	Py/β, β/Py, β/Hp, β/β

U. S. Patent 5,578,444 describes numerous promoter region targeting sequences from which base pair sequences for targeting a polyamide can be identified.

10

PCT U.S. 97/003332 describes methods for synthesis of polyamides which are suitable for preparing polyamides of this invention. The use of β-alanine in place of a pyrrole amino acid in the synthetic methods provides aromatic/aliphatic pairing (Im/β, β/Im, Py/β, and β/Py) and aliphatic/aliphatic pairing (β/β) substitution. The use of γ-aminobutyric acid, or a substituted γ-aminobutyric acid such as (R)-2,4 diaminobutyric acid, provides for preferred hairpin turns. The following examples illustrate the synthesis of polyamides of the present invention.

15

Example 1:
**PREPARATION OF A PROTECTED Hp MONOMER FOR SOLID PHASE
SYNTHESIS.**

Distamycin and its analogs have previously been considered targets of traditional
5 multistep synthetic chemistry. Arcamone, F., Orezzi, P. G., Barbieri, W., Nicoletta, V. & Penco,
S. describe a solution phase synthesis of distamycin *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **1967**, *97*, 1097. The
repeating amide of distamycin is formed from an aromatic carboxylic acid and an aromatic
amine. The aromatic acid is often unstable to decarboxylation, and the aromatic amines have
10 been found to be air and light sensitive. Lown, J. W. & Krowicki, K. describe a solution phase
synthesis of Distamycin *J. Org. Chem.* **1985**, *50*, 3774. The variable coupling yields, long
reaction times (often >24 h), numerous side products, and reactive intermediates (acid chlorides
and trichloro ketones) characteristic of the traditional solution phase coupling reactions make
the synthesis of the aromatic carboxamides problematic. B. Merrifield describes the solid phase
15 synthesis of a tetrapeptide *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1963**, *85*, 2149. In order to implement an efficient
solid phase methodology for the synthesis of the pyrrole- imidazole polyamides, the following
components were developed: (1) a synthesis which provides large quantities of appropriately
protected monomer or dimer building blocks in high purity, (2) optimized protocols for forming
an amide in high yield from a support-bound aromatic amine and an aromatic carboxylic acid,
20 (3) methods for monitoring reactions on the solid support, and (4) a stable resin linkage agent
that can be cleaved in high yield upon completion of the synthesis. Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B.
describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino
acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. In order to
prepare polyamides which contain the 3-hydroxypyrrole monomer, a synthesis has been
25 developed which allows the appropriately protected Boc-Op acid monomer to be prepared on 50
g scale. ¹H NMR and ¹³C NMR spectra were recorded on a General Electric-QE 300 NMR
spectrometer in CD₃OD or DMSO-*d*₆, with chemical shifts reported in parts per million relative
to residual CHD₂OD or DMSO-*d*₅, respectively. IR spectra were recorded on a Perkin-Elmer
FTIR spectrometer. High-resolution mass spectra were recorded using fast atom bombardment
(FABMS) techniques at the Mass Spectrometry Laboratory at the University of California,
30 Riverside. Reactions were executed under an inert argon atmosphere. Reagent grade chemicals
were used as received unless otherwise noted. Still, W. C., Kahn, M. & Mitra, A. describe flash
column chromatography *J. Org. Chem.* **1978**, *40*, 2923-2925. Flash chromatography was
carried out using EM science Kieselgel 60 (230-400) mesh. Thin-layer chromatography was
performed on EM Reagents silica gel plates (0.5 mm thickness). All compounds were
35 visualized with short-wave ultraviolet light.

Table 4 :Intermediates for preparation of Boc-protected 3-methoxypyrrole

NAME	STRUCTURE
Ethyl 4-carboxy-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate.	
Ethyl 4-[(Benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate	
Ethyl 4-[(Benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate	
Ethyl 4-[(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate	
4-[(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylic acid	

Ethyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate Ethyl-4-carboxy-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate (60 g, 281.7 mmol) was dissolved in 282 mL acetonitrile. TEA (28.53 g, 282 mmol) was added, followed by diphenylphosphorylazide (77.61 g, 282 mmol). The mixture was refluxed for 5 hours, followed by addition of benzyl alcohol (270 ml) and reflux continued overnight. The solution was cooled and volatiles removed *in vacuo*. The residue was absorbed onto silica and chromatographed, 4:1 hexanes : ethyl acetate, to give a white solid (21.58 g, 24%) ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.73 (s, 1H), 8.31 (s, 1H), 7.31 (m, 5H), 6.96 (s, 1H), 5.08 (s, 2H), 4.21 (q, 2H, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.66 (s, 3H), 1.25 (t, 3H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS *m/e* 319.163 (M+H 319.122 calcd. for C₁₆H₁₈N₂O₅).

Ethyl 4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate. Ethyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate (13.4 g, 42.3 mmol) was dissolved in 110 mL acetone. Anhydrous K₂CO₃ (11.67 g, 84.5 mmol) was added,

followed by methyl iodide (5.96 g, 42.3 mmol) and dimethylaminopyridine (0.5 g, 4.23 mmol) and the mixture stirred overnight. The solid K_2CO_3 was removed by filtration and 200 ml water added. Volatiles were removed *in vacuo* and the solution made acidic with addition of 1N H_2SO_4 . The aqueous layer was extracted with diethyl ether. Organic layers were combined, washed with 10% H_2SO_4 , dried over $MgSO_4$, and dried to give a white solid. The solid was used without further purification and dissolved in 38 ml DMF. DIEA (11 ml), Boc anhydride (9.23 g, 42.3 mmol), and 10 % Pd/C (500 mg) were added and the solution stirred under hydrogen (1 atm) for 2.1 h. The slurry was filtered through celite which was washed with methanol. Water 250 ml was added and volatiles removed *in vacuo*. The aqueous layer was extracted with ether. Organic layers were combined, washed with water and brine, and dried over $MgSO_4$. Solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give a white solid (8.94 g, 71%) 1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 8.43 (s, 1H), 7.03 (s, 1H), 4.19 (q, 2H, $J = 7.1$ Hz), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.67 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.26 (t, 3H, $J = 7.1$); MS m/e 299.161 (M+H 299.153 calcd. for $C_{14}H_{22}N_2O_5$).

Ethyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate Ethyl 4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate (9.0 g, 30.2 mmol) was dissolved in 30 mL ethanol. NaOH (30 ml, 1 M, aq) was added and the solution stirred for 4 days. Water (200 ml) was added and ethanol removed *in vacuo*. The solution was extracted with diethyl ether, aqueous layer acidified to pH = 2-3, and extracted again with diethyl ether. Organic layers were dried over $MgSO_4$, and solvent removed *in vacuo* to give a white solid (6.0 g, 20.5 mmol, 87% based on recovered SM) 1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 12.14 (s, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H), 6.98 (s, 1H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 3.66 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 9H); MS m/e 293.112 (M+H 293.104 calcd. for $C_{12}H_{18}N_2O_5$).

EXAMPLE 2:

SOLID PHASE SYNTHESIS OF 3-HYDROXYPYRROLE POLYAMIDES.

Cycling protocols were optimized to afford high stepwise coupling yields (>99%). Deprotection by aminolysis affords up to 100 mg quantities of polyamide. Solid phase polyamide synthesis protocols were modified from the *in situ* neutralization Boc-chemistry protocols. Schnolzer, M., Alewood, P., Jones, A., Alewood, D., Kent, S.B.H. report rapid *in situ* neutralization for solid phase peptide synthesis *Int. J. Peptide. Protein. Res.* **1992**, *40*, 180. Coupling cycles are rapid, 72 min per residue for manual synthesis or 180 min per residue for machine-assisted synthesis, and require no special precautions beyond those used for ordinary solid phase peptide synthesis. Manual solid phase synthesis of a pyrrole-imidazole polyamide consists of a dichloromethane (DCM) wash, removal of the Boc group with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA)/DCM/thiophenol (PhSH), a DCM wash, a DMF wash, taking a resin sample for analysis, addition of activated monomer, addition of DIEA if necessary, coupling for 45 min, taking a

resin sample for analysis, and a final DMF wash (Figure 5, Table I). In addition, the manual solid phase protocol for synthesis of pyrrole-imidazole polyamides has been adapted for use on a ABI 430A peptide synthesizer. The aromatic amine of the pyrrole and imidazole do not react in the quantitative ninhydrin test. Stepwise cleavage of a sample of resin and analysis by HPLC indicates that high stepwise yields (> 99%) are routinely achieved.

Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), Hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt), 2-(1H-Benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium hexa-fluorophosphate (HBTU) and 0.2 mmol/gram Boc- β -alanine-(-4-carboxamidomethyl)-benzyl-ester-copoly(styrene-divinylbenzene) resin (Boc- β -Pam-Resin) was purchased from Peptides International (0.2 mmol/gram), NovaBiochem (0.6 mmol/gram), or Peninsula (0.6 mmol/gram). (R)-2-Fmoc-4-Boc-diaminobutyric acid, (S)-2-Fmoc-4-Boc-diaminobutyric acid, and (R)-2-amino-4-Boc-diaminobutyric acid were purchased from Bachem. *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (DIEA), *N,N*-dimethylformamide (DMF), *N*-methylpyrrolidone (NMP), DMSO/NMP, Acetic anhydride (Ac_2O), and 0.0002 M potassium cyanide/pyridine were purchased from Applied Biosystems. Dichloromethane (DCM) and triethylamine (TEA) were reagent grade from EM, thiophenol (PhSH), dimethylaminopropylamine (Dp), Sodium Hydride, (R)- α -methoxy- α -(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetic acid ((R)MPTA) and (S)- α -methoxy- α -(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetic acid ((S)MPTA) were from Aldrich, trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) Biograde from Halocarbon, phenol from Fisher, and ninhydrin from Pierce. All reagents were used without further purification.

Quik-Sep polypropylene disposable filters were purchased from Isolab Inc. ^1H NMR spectra were recorded on a General Electric-QE NMR spectrometer at 300 MHz with chemical shifts reported in parts per million relative to residual solvent. UV spectra were measured in water on a Hewlett-Packard Model 8452A diode array spectrophotometer. Optical rotations were recorded on a JASCO Dip 1000 Digital Polarimeter. Matrix-assisted, laser desorption/ionization time of flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF) was performed at the Protein and Peptide Microanalytical Facility at the California Institute of Technology. HPLC analysis was performed on either a HP 1090M analytical HPLC or a Beckman Gold system using a RAINEN C_{18} , Microsorb MV, 5 μm , 300 x 4.6 mm reversed phase column in 0.1% (wt/v) TFA with acetonitrile as eluent and a flow rate of 1.0 mL/min, gradient elution 1.25% acetonitrile/min. Preparatory reverse phase HPLC was performed on a Beckman HPLC with a Waters DeltaPak 25 x 100 mm, 100 μm C18 column equipped with a guard, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA, 0.25% acetonitrile/min. 18M Ω water was obtained from a Millipore MilliQ water purification system, and all buffers were 0.2 μm filtered.

Activation of Boc-3-methoxypyrrole acid. The amino acid (0.5 mmol) was dissolved in 2 mL DMF. HBTU (190 mg, 0.5 mmol) was added followed by DIEA (1 mL) and the resulting mixture was shaken for 5 min.

5 **Activation of Imidazole-2-carboxylic acid, γ -aminobutyric acid, Boc-glycine, and Boc- β -alanine.** The appropriate amino acid or acid (2 mmol) was dissolved in 2 mL DMF. HBTU (720 mg, 1.9 mmol) was added followed by DIEA (1 mL) and the solution shaken for at least 5 min.

10 **Activation of Boc-Imidazole acid.** Boc imidazole acid (257 mg, 1 mmol) and HOBt (135 mg, 1 mmol) were dissolved in 2 mL DMF, DCC (202 mg, 1 mmol) is then added and the solution allowed to stand for at least 5 min.

15 **Acetylation Mix.** 2 mL DMF, DIEA (710 μ L, 4.0 mmol), and acetic anhydride (380 μ L, 4.0 mmol) were combined immediately before use.

Manual Synthesis Protocol. Boc- β -alanine-Pam-Resin (1.25 g, 0.25 mmol) is placed in a 20 mL glass reaction vessel, shaken in DMF for 5 min and the reaction vessel drained. The resin was washed with DCM (2 x 30 s.) and the Boc group removed with 80% TFA/DCM/0.5M PhSH, 1 x 30s., 1 x 20 min The resin was washed with DCM (2 x 30 s.) followed by DMF (1 x 30 s.) A resin sample (5 - 10 mg) was taken for analysis. The vessel was drained completely and activated monomer added, followed by DIEA if necessary. The reaction vessel was shaken vigorously to make a slurry. The coupling was allowed to proceed for 90 min, and a resin sample taken. Acetic anhydride (1 mL) was added and the reaction shaken for 5 min. The reaction vessel was then washed with DMF, followed by DCM.

Machine-Assisted Protocols. Machine-assisted synthesis was performed on a ABI 430A synthesizer on a 0.18 mmol scale (900 mg resin; 0.2 mmol/gram). Each cycle of amino acid addition involved: deprotection with approximately 80% TFA/DCM/0.4M PhSH for 3 minutes, draining the reaction vessel, and then deprotection for 17 minutes; 2 dichloromethane flow washes; an NMP flow wash; draining the reaction vessel; coupling for 1 hour with *in situ* neutralization, addition of dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO)/NMP, coupling for 30 minutes, addition of DIEA, coupling for 30 minutes; draining the reaction vessel; washing with DCM, taking a resin sample for evaluation of the progress of the synthesis by HPLC analysis; capping with acetic anhydride/DIEA in DCM for 6 minutes; and washing with DCM. A double couple cycle is employed when coupling aliphatic amino acids to imidazole, all other couplings are performed with single couple cycles.

The ABI 430A synthesizer was left in the standard hardware configuration for NMP-HOBt protocols. Reagent positions 1 and 7 were DIEA, reagent position 2 was TFA/0.5M thiophenol, reagent position 3 was 70% ethanolamine/methanol, reagent position 4 was acetic anhydride, reagent position 5 was DMSO/NMP, reagent position 6 was methanol, and reagent position 8 was DMF. New activator functions were written, one for direct transfer of the cartridge contents to the concentrator (switch list 21, 25, 26, 35, 37, 44), and a second for transfer of reagent position 8 directly to the cartridge (switch list 37, 39, 45, 46).

Boc-Py-OBt ester (357 mg, 1 mmol) was dissolved in 2 ml DMF and filtered into a synthesis cartridge. Boc-Im acid monomer was activated (DCC/HOBt), filtered, and placed in a synthesis cartridge. Imidazole-2-carboxylic acid was added manually. At the initiation of the coupling cycle the synthesis was interrupted, the reaction vessel vented and the activated monomer added directly to the reaction vessel through the resin sampling loop via syringe. When manual addition was necessary an empty synthesis cartridge was used. Aliphatic amino acids (2 mmol) and HBTU (1.9 mmol) were placed in a synthesis cartridge. 3 ml of DMF was added using a calibrated delivery loop from reagent bottle 8, followed by calibrated delivery of 1 ml DIEA from reagent bottle 7, and a 3 minute mixing of the cartridge.

The activator cycle was written to transfer activated monomer directly from the cartridge to the concentrator vessel, bypassing the activator vessel. After transfer, 1 ml of DIEA was measured into the cartridge using a calibrated delivery loop, and the DIEA solution combined with the activated monomer solution in the concentrator vessel. The activated ester in 2:1 DMF/DIEA was then transferred to the reaction vessel. All lines were emptied with argon before and after solution transfers.

ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp. ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc-β-Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat dimethylaminopropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (97 mg, 49% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆)

δ 10.24 (s, 1 H), 10.14 (s, 1 H), 9.99 (s, 1 H), 9.94 (s, 1 H), 9.88 (s, 1 H), 9.4 (br s, 1 H), 9.25 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 1 H), 8.05 (m, 3 H), 7.60 (s, 1 H), 7.46 (s, 1 H), 7.41 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (d, 1), 7.21 (d, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H), 7.13 (m, 2 H), 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.02 (d, 1 H), 6.83 (m, 2 H), 3.96 (s, 6 H), 3.90 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (m, 6 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.75 (d, 9 H), 3.33 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.15 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 3.08 (q, 2 H, $J = 6.0$ Hz), 2.96 (quintet, 2 H, $J = 5.6$ Hz), 2.70 (d, 6 H, $J = 4.5$ Hz), 2.32 (m, 4 H), 1.71 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1253.5 (1253.6 calc. for $C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$).

ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp* (5 mg, 3.9 μ mol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μ L) and thiophenol (500 μ L) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was slowly added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp* (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μ L) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp* is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (3.8 mg, 77 % recovery). UV (H_2O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); 1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 10.34 (s, 1 H), 10.24 (s, 1 H), 10.00 (s, 2 H), 9.93 (s, 1 H), 9.87 (s, 1 H), 9.83 (s, 1 H), 9.4 (br s, 1 H), 9.04 (s, 1 H), 8.03 (m, 3 H), 7.58 (s, 1 H), 7.44 (s, 1 H), 7.42 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (s, 1 H), 7.20 (m, 3 H), 7.12 (m, 2 H), 7.05 (d, 1 H), 7.02 (d, 1 H), 6.83 (s, 1 H), 6.79 (s, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 6 H), 3.90 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.75 (d, 6 H), 3.33 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.14 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.08 (q, 2 H, $J = 6.1$ Hz), 2.99 (quintet, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 2.69 (d, 6 H, $J = 4.2$ Hz), 2.31 (m, 4 H), 1.72 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1239.6 (1239.6 calc. for $C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{11}$).

ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp. *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc- β -Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g) as described for *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp*. A sample of *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat dimethylaminopropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (101 mg, 50% recovery). UV (H_2O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1253.6 (1253.6 calc. for $C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$).

ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy. A sample of *ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp* (5 mg, 3.9 μmol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide and purified by reversed phase HPLC as described for *ImImHpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp*. *ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (3.2 mg, 66 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1239.6 (1239.6 calc. for C₅₇H₇₁N₂₂O₁₁).

ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp. *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc-β-Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.45 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat dimethylaminopropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (45 mg, 25% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 310 (50,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.45 (s, 1 H), 9.90 (s, 1 H), 9.82 (s, 1 H), 9.5 (br s, 1 H), 9.38 (s, 1 H), 9.04 (s, 1 H), 8.02 (m, 3 H), 7.37 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (m, 2 H), 7.15 (d, 1 H, *J* = 1.6 Hz), 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.09 (d, 1 H), 7.03 (d, 1 H), 6.99 (d, 1 H), 6.87 (d, 1 H), 6.84 (d, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 3.77 (s, 6 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.74 (s, 1 H), 3.34 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.6 Hz), 3.20 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.8 Hz), 3.09 (q, 2 H, *J* = 6.1 Hz), 2.97 (quintet, 2 H, *J* = 5.3 Hz), 2.70 (d, 6 H, *J* = 3.9 Hz), 2.34 (m, 4 H), 1.73 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1007.6 (1007.5 calc. for C₄₈H₆₃N₁₆O₉).

ImPyPy-γ-HpPyPy. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp* (5 mg, 4.8 μmol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μL) and thiophenol (500 μL) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was slowly added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, *ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp* (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μL) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImHpPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (2.5 mg, 52 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 310 (50,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.44 (s, 1 H), 10.16 (s, 1 H), 9.90 (s, 1 H), 9.77 (s, 1 H), 9.5 (br s, 1 H), 9.00 (s,

1 H), 8.03 (m, 3 H), 7.37 (s, 1 H), 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.14 (d, 1 H, $J = 1.7$ Hz), 7.12 (m, 2 H), 7.02 (d, 1 H), 6.93 (d, 1 H), 6.88 (d, 1 H), 6.82 (d, 1 H), 6.72 (d, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 3.77 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.74 (s, 1 H), 3.36 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.22 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.9$ Hz), 3.09 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 2.98 (quintet, 2 H, $J = 5.3$ Hz), 2.70 (d, 6 H, $J = 4.3$ Hz), 2.34 (m, 4 H), 1.78 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 994.2 (993.5 calc. for $C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$).

Table 5. Mass spectral characterization of Op and Hp polyamides, synthesized and purified as described for ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp and ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp.

	POLYAMIDE	FORMULA	(M+H)CALCD	FOUND
10	ImOpPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.5
	ImHpPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.2
	ImPyOp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.5
	ImPyHp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.4
	ImPyPy- γ -OpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.6
15	ImPyPy- γ -HpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.2
	ImPyPy- γ -PyOpPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.5
	ImPyPy- γ -PyHpPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.4
	ImOpOp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{49}H_{65}N_{16}O_{10}$	1037.5	1037.5
	ImHpHp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_{10}$	1009.5	1009.4
20	ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$	1253.6	1253.5
	ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{11}$	1239.6	1239.6
	ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$	1253.6	1253.6
	ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{11}$	1239.6	1239.6
	ImOpPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{60}H_{76}N_{21}O_{12}$	1282.6	1282.6
25	ImHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{21}O_{12}$	1254.6	1254.6
	ImImOpPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{59}H_{75}N_{22}O_{12}$	1283.6	1283.6
	ImImHpPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{12}$	1255.6	1255.5
	ImOpPyPy- γ -PyPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{60}H_{75}N_{20}O_{11}$	1251.6	1251.5
	ImPyPyPy- γ -PyPyOpPy- β -Dp	$C_{60}H_{75}N_{20}O_{11}$	1251.6	1251.5
30	ImImPyPy- γ -ImPyOpPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$	1253.6	1253.7
	ImOpPyPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{72}H_{88}N_{25}O_{14}$	1526.7	1526.6
	ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{70}H_{84}N_{25}O_{14}$	1498.7	1498.0
	ImImPyPyPy- γ -ImOpOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{71}H_{87}N_{26}O_{14}$	1527.7	1527.7

EXAMPLE 3:
DETERMINATION OF POLYAMIDE
BINDING AFFINITY AND SEQUENCE SPECIFICITY.

Representative footprint titration experiments are shown in Figures 3 and 10. A 252-bp DNA fragment which is typically used for the footprint titration experiments provides 247 possible 6-bp binding sites for an eight-ring hairpin polyamide. Thus, in addition to providing DNA binding affinities, the footprint titration experiments also reveal DNA binding sequence-specificity. The DNA binding sequence specificity of polyamides which differ by a single Py/Py, Hp/Py, or Py/Hp pair for sites which differ by a single A•T or T•A base pair are described in Tables 1, 6, and 7.

Quantitative DNase I Footprint Titrations All reactions were executed in a total volume of 400 μ L (Brenowitz, M. *et al.*, 1986). A polyamide stock solution or H₂O (for reference lanes) was added to an assay buffer containing 3'-³²P radiolabeled restriction fragment (20,000 cpm), affording final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0, and either (i) a suitable concentration range of polyamide, or (ii) no polyamide (for reference lanes). The solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 24 hours at 22°C. Footprinting reactions were initiated by the addition of 10 μ L of a stock solution of DNase I (at the appropriate concentration to give ~55% intact DNA) containing 1 mM dithiothreitol and allowed to proceed for 7 minutes at 22°C. The reactions were stopped by the addition of 50 μ L of a solution containing 2.25 M NaCl, 150 mM EDTA, 23 μ M base pair calf thymus DNA, and 0.6 mg/ml glycogen, and ethanol precipitated. The reactions were resuspended in 1 \times TBE/80% formamide loading buffer, denatured by heating at 85°C for 15 minutes, and placed on ice. The reaction products were separated by electrophoresis on an 8% polyacrylamide gel (5% crosslinking, 7 M urea) in 1 \times TBE at 2000 V for 1.5 h. Gels were dried on a slab dryer and then exposed to a storage phosphor screen at 22°C.

Photostimuable storage phosphor imaging plates (Kodak Storage Phosphor Screen SO230 obtained from Molecular Dynamics) were pressed flat against dried gel samples and exposed in the dark at 22°C for 12-24 hours. A Molecular Dynamics 400S PhosphorImager was used to obtain all data from the storage screens (Johnston *et al.*, 1990). The data were analyzed by performing volume integration of the target site and reference blocks using the ImageQuant v. 3.3 software running on a Compaq Pentium 80.

Quantitative DNase I Footprint Titration Data Analysis was performed by taking a background-corrected volume integration of rectangles encompassing the footprint sites and a reference site at which DNase I reactivity was invariant across the titration generated values for

the site intensities (I_{site}) and the reference intensity (I_{ref}). The apparent fractional occupancy (θ_{app}) of the sites were calculated using the equation:

$$\theta_{\text{app}} = 1 - \frac{I_{\text{site}}/I_{\text{ref}}}{I_{\text{site}}^0/I_{\text{ref}}^0} \quad (1)$$

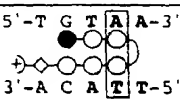
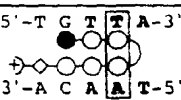
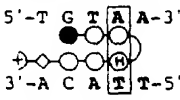
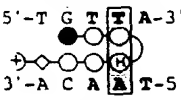


where I_{site}^0 and I_{ref}^0 are the site and reference intensities, respectively, from a DNase I control lane to which no polyamide was added.

The ($[L]_{\text{tot}}$, θ_{app}) data were fit to a Langmuir binding isotherm (eq. 2, $n=1$) by minimizing the difference between θ_{app} and θ_{fit} , using the modified Hill equation:

$$\theta_{\text{fit}} = \theta_{\text{min}} + (\theta_{\text{max}} - \theta_{\text{min}}) \frac{K_a^n [L]_{\text{tot}}^n}{1 + K_a^n [L]_{\text{tot}}^n} \quad (2)$$

where $[L]_{\text{tot}}$ is the total polyamide concentration, K_a is the equilibrium association constant, and θ_{min} and θ_{max} are the experimentally determined site saturation values when the site is unoccupied or saturated, respectively. The data were fit using a nonlinear least-squares fitting procedure of KaleidaGraph software (v. 3.0.1, Abelbeck Software) with K_a , θ_{max} , and θ_{min} as the adjustable parameters. The goodness of fit of the binding curve to the data points is evaluated by the correlation coefficient, with $R > 0.97$ as the criterion for an acceptable fit. Four sets of acceptable data were used in determining each association constant. All lanes from a gel were used unless a visual inspection revealed a data point to be obviously flawed relative to neighboring points. The data were normalized using the following equation:

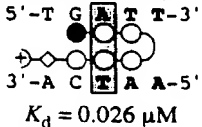
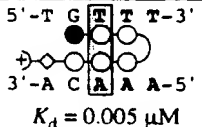
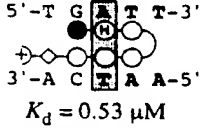
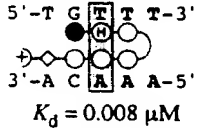
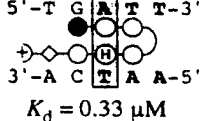
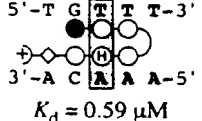
$$\theta_{\text{norm}} = \frac{\theta_{\text{app}} - \theta_{\text{min}}}{\theta_{\text{max}} - \theta_{\text{min}}} \quad (3)$$

TABLE 6 Discrimination of 5'-TGTA-3' and 5'-TGTTA-3'			
Pair [†]	5'-TGTA-3'	5'-TGTTA-3'	$K_{\text{rel}}^{\ddagger}$
Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.014 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.007 \mu\text{M}$	2.0
Py/Hp	 $K_d = 0.20 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.56 \mu\text{M}$	0.36
Hp/Py	 $K_d = 4.0 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.28 \mu\text{M}$	14

*The reported equilibrium dissociation constants are the mean values obtained from two DNase I footprint titration experiments on a 3' ³²P labeled 370-bp pDEH1 EcoRI/PvuII DNA restriction fragment¹³. The assays were carried out at 22 °C, pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂ and 5 mM CaCl₂.

[†]Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the third position.

[‡]Calculated as $K_d(5'-TGTA-3')/K_d(5'-TGTTA-3')$.

TABLE 7 Discrimination of 5'-TGATT-3' and 5'-TGTTT-3'			
Pair†	5'-TGATT-3'	5'-TGTTT-3'	$K_{rel}‡$
Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.026 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.005 \mu\text{M}$	5.2
Hp/Py	 $K_d = 0.53 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.008 \mu\text{M}$	66
Py/Hp	 $K_d = 0.33 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.59 \mu\text{M}$	0.56

*The reported equilibrium dissociation constants are the mean values obtained from two DNase I footprint titration experiments. The assays were carried out at 22 °C, pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the third position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'-TGATT-3')/K_d(5'-TGTTT-3')$.

EXAMPLE 5:

PREPARATION OF A BIFUNCTIONAL Hp-Py-Im-POLYAMIDE.

ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-NH₂. *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc-β-Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat 3,3'-diamino-*N*-methyldipropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-NH₂* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (93 mg, 46% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.34 (s, 1 H), 10.30 (br s, 1 H), 10.25 (s, 1 H), 9.96 (s, 1 H), 9.95 (s, 1 H), 9.89 (s, 1 H), 9.24 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 1 H), 8.08 (t, 1 H, *J* = 5.6 Hz), 8.0 (m, 5 H), 7.62 (s, 1 H), 7.53 (s, 1 H), 7.42 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.2 Hz), 7.21 (m, 2 H), 7.15 (m, 2 H), 7.13 (d, 1 H), 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.04 (d, 1 H), 6.84 (m, 3 H), 3.98 (s, 3 H), 3.97 (s, 3 H), 3.92 (s, 3 H), 3.82 (m, 6 H), 3.80 (s, 3 H), 3.77 (d, 6 H), 3.35 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.8 Hz) 3.0-3.3 (m, 8 H), 2.86 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.4 Hz), 2.66 (d, 3 H, *J* = 4.5 Hz), 2.31 (m, 4 H), 1.94

(quintet, 2 H, $J = 6.2$ Hz), 1.74 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1296.0 (1296.6 calc. for $C_{60}H_{78}N_{23}O_{11}$).

ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. Excess EDTA-dianhydride (50 mg) was dissolved in DMSO/NMP (1 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) by heating at 55 °C for 5 min. The dianhydride solution was added to ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -NH₂ (13 mg, 10 μ mol) dissolved in DMSO (750 μ L). The mixture was heated (55 °C, 25 min.) and the remaining EDTA-anhydride hydrolyzed (0.1M NaOH, 3 mL, 55 °C, 10 min). Aqueous TFA (0.1% wt/v) was added to adjust the total volume to 8 mL and the solution purified directly by reversed phase HPLC to provide ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (5.5 mg, 40% recovery). MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1570.9 (1570.7 calc. for $C_{70}H_{92}N_{25}O_{18}$).

ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA (5 mg, 3.1 μ mol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μ L) and thiophenol (500 μ L) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was *slowly* added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μ L) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (3.2 mg, 72 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1556.6 (1556.7 calc. for $C_{69}H_{90}N_{25}O_{18}$).

ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-NH₂. ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc- β -Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); *also see* PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat 3,3'-diamino-N-methyldipropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting

solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-NH₂ is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (104 mg, 54% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1296.6 (1296.6 calc. for C₆₀H₇₈N₂₃O₁₁).

5
10
15
ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. Excess EDTA-dianhydride (50 mg) was dissolved in DMSO/NMP (1 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) by heating at 55 °C for 5 min. The dianhydride solution was added to ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -NH₂ (13 mg, 10 μ mol) dissolved in DMSO (750 μ L). The mixture was heated (55 °C, 25 min.) and the remaining EDTA-anhydride hydrolyzed (0.1M NaOH, 3 mL, 55 °C, 10 min). Aqueous TFA (0.1% wt/v) was added to adjust the total volume to 8 mL and the solution purified directly by reversed phase HPLC to provide ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (5.9 mg, 42% recovery). MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1570.8 (1570.7 calc. for C₇₀H₉₂N₂₅O₁₈).

20
25
30
ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA (5 mg, 3.1 μ mol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μ L) and thiophenol (500 μ L) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was *slowly* added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μ L) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (3.2 mg, 72 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1555.9 (1556.7 calc. for C₆₉H₉₀N₂₅O₁₈).

30 35 EXAMPLE 6: DETERMINATION OF POLYAMIDE BINDING ORIENTATION

Affinity cleavage experiments using hairpin polyamides modified with EDTA•Fe(II) at either the C-terminus or on the γ -turn, were used to determine polyamide binding orientation and stoichiometry. The results of affinity cleavage experiments are consistent only with recognition of 6-bp by an 8-ring hairpin complex and rule out any extended 1:1 or overlapped complex formation. In addition, affinity cleavage experiments reveal hairpin formation

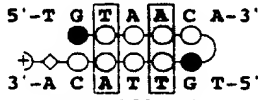
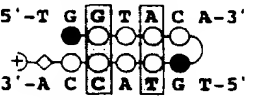
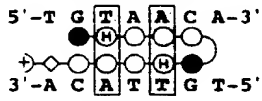
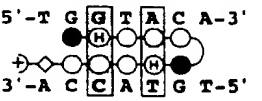
supporting the claim that it is the Hp/Py and Py/Hp pairing which form at both match and mismatch sites to discriminate A•T from T•A.

Affinity cleavage reactions were executed in a total volume of 40 μ L. A stock solution of polyamide or H₂O was added to a solution containing labeled restriction fragment (20,000 cpm), affording final solution conditions of 25 mM Tris-Acetate, 20 mM NaCl, 100 μ M/bp calf thymus DNA, and pH 7.0. Solutions were incubated for a minimum of 4 hours at 22°C. Subsequently, 4 μ L of freshly prepared 100 μ M Fe(NH₄)₂(SO₄)₂ was added and the solution allowed to equilibrate for 20 min. Cleavage reactions were initiated by the addition of 4 μ L of 100 mM dithiothreitol, allowed to proceed for 30 min at 22 °C, then stopped by the addition of 10 μ L of a solution containing 1.5 M NaOAc (pH 5.5), 0.28 mg/mL glycogen, and 14 μ M base pairs calf thymus DNA, and ethanol precipitated. The reactions were resuspended in 1x TBE/80% formamide loading buffer, denatured by heating at 85 °C for 15 min, and placed on ice. The reaction products were separated by electrophoresis on an 8% polyacrylamide gel (5% cross-link, 7 M urea) in 1x TBE at 2000 V for 1.5 hours. Gels were dried and exposed to a storage phosphor screen. Relative cleavage intensities were determined by volume integration of individual cleavage bands using ImageQuant software.

EXAMPLE 7: IMPROVEMENT TO POLYAMIDE SEQUENCE SPECIFICITY.

The polyamides of this invention provide improved specificity relative to existing polyamide technology. Turner, J. T., Baird, E. E., and Dervan, P.B. describe the recognition of seven base pair sequences in the minor groove of DNA by ten-ring pyrrole-imidazole polyamide hairpins *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1997 119, 7636. For example, quantitative DNase I footprint titrations reveal that the 10-ring hairpin ImPyPyPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPyPy- β -Dp binds a 5'-TGTAACA-3- sequence with an equilibrium dissociation constant of 0.083 nM, and 18-fold specificity versus a single base mismatch site. A number of other sites are also bound on the 252-bp DNA fragment used for the footprint titration experiments. (Figure 13). Introduction of a Hp/Py and Py/Py pair in the 10-ring polyamide, ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp, to recognize a T•A and A•T within the 7-bp target sequence, increases the sequence-specificity. For example, a single base mismatch site 5'-TGGAACA-3 is discriminated by > 5000-fold (Figure 13, Table 8). In fact all 245 7-bp mismatch sites present on the restriction fragment are discriminated > 5000-fold by the polyamide ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp (Figure 13). For cases where three A,T base pairs are present in succession it is preferred to substitute Py/Py in place of at least one Hp/Py or Py/Py to provide for recognition of A•T and T•A at a single position.

TABLE 8 Equilibrium dissociation constants*

Polyamide†	5'-TGGTCA-3'	5'-TGGACA-3'	K_{rel}^\ddagger
Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.083 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d = 1.5 \text{ nM}$	18
Hp/Py	 $K_d = 0.2 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d > 1000 \text{ nM}$	>5000

*The reported dissociation constants are the average values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. The standard deviation for each data set is less than 15% of the reported number. Assays were carried out in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂ at pH 7.0 and 22 °C.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the fourth position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'\text{-TGGTCA-3'}) / K_d(5'\text{-TGTAACA-3'})$.

EXAMPLE 8: USE OF PAIRING CODE

There are 256 possible four base pair combinations of A, T, G, and C. Of these, there are a possible 240 four base pair sequences which contain at least 1 A•T or T•A base pair and

therefore can advantageously use an Hp/Py, or Py/Hp carboxamide binding. Polyamides binding to any of these sequences can be designed in accordance with the code of TABLE 2. Table 9 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (1-16) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WGTNNW-3' sequences (W = A or T, X = A, G, C, or T). Table 10 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (17-32) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WGANNW-3' sequences (17-32). Table 11 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (33-44) which recognize twelve 5'-WGGNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 11 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G1-G4) which target the four 5'-WGGNNW-3' sequences (G1-G4) which contain exclusively G•C base pairs. Table 12 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (45-56) which recognize twelve 5'-WGCNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 12 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G5-G8) which target the four 5'-WGCNNW-3' sequences (G5-G8) which contain exclusively G•C base pairs. Table 13 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (57-72) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTTNNW-3' sequences (57-72). Table 14 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (73-88) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTANNW-3' sequences (73-88). Table 15 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (89-104) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTGNNW-3' sequences (89-104). Table 16 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (105-120) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTCNNW-3' sequences (105-120). Table 17 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (121-136) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WATNNW-3' sequences (121-136). Table 18 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (137-152) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WAANNW-3' sequences (137-152). Table 19 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (153-168) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WAGNNW-3' sequences (153-168). Table 20 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (169-184) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WACNNW-3' sequences (169-184). Table 21 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (185-200) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WCTNNW-3' sequences (185-200). Table 22 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (201-216) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WCANNW-3' sequences (201-216). Table 23 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (217-228) which recognize the twelve 5'-WCGNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 23 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G9-G12) which target the four 5'-WCGNNW-3' sequences (G9-G12) which contain exclusively C•G base pairs. Table 24 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (229-240) which recognize the twelve 5'-WCCNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 24 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G13-G16) which target the four 5'-WCCNNW-3' sequences (G13-G16) which contain exclusively C•G base pairs.

TABLE 9: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGTNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	1) 5'-W G T T T W-3'	1) ImHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	2) 5'-W G T T A W-3'	2) ImHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
10	3) 5'-W G T T G W-3'	3) ImHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	4) 5'-W G T T C W-3'	4) ImHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	5) 5'-W G T A T W-3'	5) ImHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	6) 5'-W G T A A W-3'	6) ImHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	7) 5'-W G T A G W-3'	7) ImHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
20	8) 5'-W G T A C W-3'	8) ImHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
	9) 5'-W G T G T W-3'	9) ImHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	10) 5'-W G T G A W-3'	10) ImHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	11) 5'-W G T G G W-3'	11) ImHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	12) 5'-W G T G C W-3'	12) ImHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
30	13) 5'-W G T C T W-3'	13) ImHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
	14) 5'-W G T C A W-3'	14) ImHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	15) 5'-W G T C G W-3'	15) ImHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	16) 5'-W G T C C W-3'	16) ImHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 10: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	17) 5'-W G A T T W-3'	17) ImPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	18) 5'-W G A T A W-3'	18) ImPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
	19) 5'-W G A T G W-3'	19) ImPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
10	20) 5'-W G A T C W-3'	20) ImPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	21) 5'-W G A A T W-3'	21) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpPy
15	22) 5'-W G A A A W-3'	22) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpPy
	23) 5'-W G A A G W-3'	23) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpPy
	24) 5'-W G A A C W-3'	24) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpPy
20	25) 5'-W G A G T W-3'	25) ImPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	26) 5'-W G A G A W-3'	26) ImPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
25	27) 5'-W G A G G W-3'	27) ImPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
	28) 5'-W G A G C W-3'	28) ImPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	29) 5'-W G A C T W-3'	29) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpPy
30	30) 5'-W G A C A W-3'	30) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpPy
	31) 5'-W G A C G W-3'	31) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpPy
35	32) 5'-W G A C C W-3'	32) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpPy

TABLE 11: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	33) 5'-W G G T T W-3'	33) ImImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	34) 5'-W G G T A W-3'	34) ImImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
	35) 5'-W G G T G W-3'	35) ImImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
10	36) 5'-W G G T C W-3'	36) ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	37) 5'-W G G A T W-3'	37) ImImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	38) 5'-W G G A A W-3'	38) ImImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	39) 5'-W G G A G W-3'	39) ImImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
	40) 5'-W G G A C W-3'	40) ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
20	41) 5'-W G G G T W-3'	41) ImImImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	42) 5'-W G G G A W-3'	42) ImImImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	43) 5'-W G G C T W-3'	43) ImImPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
	44) 5'-W G G C A W-3'	44) ImImPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	G1) 5'-W G G G G W-3'	G1) ImImImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
30	G2) 5'-W G G G C W-3'	G2) ImImImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	G3) 5'-W G G C G W-3'	G3) ImImPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	G4) 5'-W G G C C W-3'	G4) ImImPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 12: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGCNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	45) 5'-W G C T T W-3'	45) ImPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	46) 5'-W G C T A W-3'	46) ImPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImPy
	47) 5'-W G C T G W-3'	47) ImPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImPy
10	48) 5'-W G C T C W-3'	48) ImPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	49) 5'-W G C A T W-3'	49) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImPy
15	50) 5'-W G C A A W-3'	50) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImPy
	51) 5'-W G C A G W-3'	51) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImPy
	52) 5'-W G C A C W-3'	52) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImPy
20	53) 5'-W G C G T W-3'	53) ImPyImHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	54) 5'-W G C G A W-3'	54) ImPyImPy- γ -HpPyImPy
25	55) 5'-W G C C T W-3'	55) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyImImPy
	56) 5'-W G C C A W-3'	56) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpImImPy
	G5) 5'-W G C G G W-3'	G5) ImPyImIm- γ -PyPyImPy
30	G6) 5'-W G C G C W-3'	G6) ImPyImPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	G7) 5'-W G C C G W-3'	G7) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyImImPy
35	G8) 5'-W G C C C W-3'	G8) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImImImPy

TABLE 13: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTTNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	57) 5'-W T T T T W-3'	57) HpHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	58) 5'-W T T T A W-3'	58) HpHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
	59) 5'-W T T T G W-3'	59) HpHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
10	60) 5'-W T T T C W-3'	60) HpHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	61) 5'-W T T A T W-3'	61) HpHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	62) 5'-W T T A A W-3'	62) HpHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	63) 5'-W T T A G W-3'	63) HpHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
	64) 5'-W T T A C W-3'	64) HpHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
20	65) 5'-W T T G T W-3'	65) HpHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	66) 5'-W T T G A W-3'	66) HpHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	67) 5'-W T T G G W-3'	67) HpHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	68) 5'-W T T G C W-3'	68) HpHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	69) 5'-W T T C T W-3'	69) HpHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
30	70) 5'-W T T C A W-3'	70) HpHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	71) 5'-W T T C G W-3'	71) HpHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	72) 5'-W T T C C W-3'	72) HpHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 14: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	73) 5'-W T A T T W-3'	73) HpPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	74) 5'-W T A T A W-3'	74) HpPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
	75) 5'-W T A T G W-3'	75) HpPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
10	76) 5'-W T A T C W-3'	76) HpPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	77) 5'-W T A A T W-3'	77) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpPy
15	78) 5'-W T A A A W-3'	78) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpPy
	79) 5'-W T A A G W-3'	79) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpPy
	80) 5'-W T A A C W-3'	80) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpPy
20	81) 5'-W T A G T W-3'	81) HpPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	82) 5'-W T A G A W-3'	82) HpPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
25	83) 5'-W T A G G W-3'	83) HpPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
	84) 5'-W T A G C W-3'	84) HpPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	85) 5'-W T A C T W-3'	85) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpPy
30	86) 5'-W T A C A W-3'	86) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpPy
	87) 5'-W T A C G W-3'	87) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpPy
35	88) 5'-W T A C C W-3'	88) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpPy

TABLE 15: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	89) 5'-W T G T T W-3'	89) HpImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	90) 5'-W T G T A W-3'	90) HpImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
	91) 5'-W T G T G W-3'	91) HpImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
10	92) 5'-W T G T C W-3'	92) HpImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	93) 5'-W T G A T W-3'	93) HpImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	94) 5'-W T G A A W-3'	94) HpImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	95) 5'-W T G A G W-3'	95) HpImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
	96) 5'-W T G A C W-3'	96) HpImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
20	97) 5'-W T G G T W-3'	97) HpImImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	98) 5'-W T G G A W-3'	98) HpImImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	99) 5'-W T G C T W-3'	99) HpImPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
	100) 5'-W T G C A W-3'	100) HpImPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	101) 5'-W T G G G W-3'	101) HpImImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
30	102) 5'-W T G G C W-3'	102) HpImImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	103) 5'-W T G C G W-3'	103) HpImPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	104) 5'-W T G C C W-3'	104) HpImPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 16: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTCNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	105) 5'-W T C T T W-3'	105) HpPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	106) 5'-W T C T A W-3'	106) HpPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImPy
	107) 5'-W T C T G W-3'	107) HpPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImPy
10	108) 5'-W T C T C W-3'	108) HpPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	109) 5'-W T C A T W-3'	109) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImPy
15	110) 5'-W T C A A W-3'	110) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImPy
	111) 5'-W T C A G W-3'	111) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImPy
	112) 5'-W T C A C W-3'	112) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImPy
20	113) 5'-W T C G T W-3'	113) HpPyImHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	114) 5'-W T C G A W-3'	114) HpPyImPy- γ -HpPyImPy
25	115) 5'-W T C C T W-3'	115) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyImImPy
	116) 5'-W T C C A W-3'	116) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpImImPy
	117) 5'-W T C G G W-3'	117) HpPyImIm- γ -PyPyImPy
30	118) 5'-W T C G C W-3'	118) HpPyImPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	119) 5'-W T C C G W-3'	119) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyImImPy
35	120) 5'-W T C C C W-3'	120) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImImImPy

TABLE 17: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WATNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	121) 5'-W A T T T W-3'	121) PyHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	122) 5'-W A T T A W-3'	122) PyHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
10	123) 5'-W A T T G W-3'	123) PyHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
	124) 5'-W A T T C W-3'	124) PyHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
	125) 5'-W A T A T W-3'	125) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyHp
15	126) 5'-W A T A A W-3'	126) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyHp
	127) 5'-W A T A G W-3'	127) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyHp
20	128) 5'-W A T A C W-3'	128) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyHp
	129) 5'-W A T G T W-3'	129) PyHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	130) 5'-W A T G A W-3'	130) PyHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
25	131) 5'-W A T G G W-3'	131) PyHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
	132) 5'-W A T G C W-3'	132) PyHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
30	133) 5'-W A T C T W-3'	133) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyHp
	134) 5'-W A T C A W-3'	134) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyHp
	135) 5'-W A T C G W-3'	135) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyHp
35	136) 5'-W A T C C W-3'	136) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyHp

TABLE 18: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WAANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	137) 5'-W A A T T W-3'	137) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpHp
	138) 5'-W A A T A W-3'	138) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpHp
	139) 5'-W A A T G W-3'	139) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpHp
10	140) 5'-W A A T C W-3'	140) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpHp
	141) 5'-W A A A T W-3'	141) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpHp
15	142) 5'-W A A A A W-3'	142) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpHp
	143) 5'-W A A A G W-3'	143) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpHp
	144) 5'-W A A A C W-3'	144) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpHp
20	145) 5'-W A A G T W-3'	145) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpHp
	146) 5'-W A A G A W-3'	146) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpHp
25	147) 5'-W A A G G W-3'	147) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpHp
	148) 5'-W A A G C W-3'	148) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpHp
	149) 5'-W A A C T W-3'	149) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpHp
30	150) 5'-W A A C A W-3'	150) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpHp
	151) 5'-W A A C G W-3'	151) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpHp
35	152) 5'-W A A C C W-3'	152) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpHp

TABLE 19: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WAGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	153) 5'-W A G T T W-3'	153) PyImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	154) 5'-W A G T A W-3'	154) PyImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
	155) 5'-W A G T G W-3'	155) PyImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
10	156) 5'-W A G T C W-3'	156) PyImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
	157) 5'-W A G A T W-3'	157) PyImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyHp
15	158) 5'-W A G A A W-3'	158) PyImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyHp
	159) 5'-W A G A G W-3'	159) PyImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyHp
	160) 5'-W A G A C W-3'	160) PyImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyHp
20	161) 5'-W A G G T W-3'	161) PyImImHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	162) 5'-W A G G A W-3'	162) PyImImPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
25	163) 5'-W A G C T W-3'	163) PyImPyHp- γ -PyImPyHp
	164) 5'-W A G C A W-3'	164) PyImPyPy- γ -HpImPyHp
	165) 5'-W A G G G W-3'	165) PyImImIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
30	166) 5'-W A G G C W-3'	166) PyImImPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
	167) 5'-W A G C G W-3'	167) PyImPyIm- γ -PyImPyHp
35	168) 5'-W A G C C W-3'	168) PyImPyPy- γ -ImImPyHp

TABLE 20: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WACNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	169) 5'-W A C T T W-3'	169) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImHp
	170) 5'-W A C T A W-3'	170) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImHp
	171) 5'-W A C T G W-3'	171) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImHp
10	172) 5'-W A C T C W-3'	172) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImHp
	173) 5'-W A C A T W-3'	173) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImHp
15	174) 5'-W A C A A W-3'	174) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImHp
	175) 5'-W A C A G W-3'	175) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImHp
	176) 5'-W A C A C W-3'	176) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImHp
20	177) 5'-W A C G T W-3'	177) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyImHp
	178) 5'-W A C G A W-3'	178) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyImHp
25	179) 5'-W A C C T W-3'	179) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImImHp
	180) 5'-W A C C A W-3'	180) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImImHp
	181) 5'-W A C G G W-3'	181) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyImHp
30	182) 5'-W A C G C W-3'	182) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyImHp
	183) 5'-W A C C G W-3'	183) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImImHp
35	184) 5'-W A C C C W-3'	184) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImImHp

TABLE 21: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCTNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	185) 5'-W C T T T W-3'	185) PyHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	186) 5'-W C T T A W-3'	186) PyHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
	187) 5'-W C T T G W-3'	187) PyHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
10	188) 5'-W C T T C W-3'	188) PyHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	189) 5'-W C T A T W-3'	189) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyIm
15	190) 5'-W C T A A W-3'	190) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyIm
	191) 5'-W C T A G W-3'	191) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyIm
	192) 5'-W C T A C W-3'	192) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyIm
20	193) 5'-W C T G T W-3'	193) PyHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	194) 5'-W C T G A W-3'	194) PyHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
25	195) 5'-W C T G G W-3'	195) PyHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
	196) 5'-W C T G C W-3'	196) PyHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	197) 5'-W C T C T W-3'	197) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyIm
30	198) 5'-W C T C A W-3'	198) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyIm
	199) 5'-W C T C G W-3'	199) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyIm
35	200) 5'-W C T C C W-3'	200) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyIm

TABLE 22: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	201) 5'-W C A T T W-3'	201) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpIm
	202) 5'-W C A T A W-3'	202) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpIm
	203) 5'-W C A T G W-3'	203) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpIm
10	204) 5'-W C A T C W-3'	204) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpIm
	205) 5'-W C A A T W-3'	205) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpIm
15	206) 5'-W C A A A W-3'	206) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpIm
	207) 5'-W C A A G W-3'	207) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpIm
	208) 5'-W C A A C W-3'	208) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpIm
20	209) 5'-W C A G T W-3'	209) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpIm
	210) 5'-W C A G A W-3'	210) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpIm
25	211) 5'-W C A G G W-3'	211) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpIm
	212) 5'-W C A G C W-3'	212) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpIm
	213) 5'-W C A C T W-3'	213) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpIm
30	214) 5'-W C A C A W-3'	214) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpIm
	215) 5'-W C A C G W-3'	215) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpIm
35	216) 5'-W C A C C W-3'	216) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpIm

TABLE 23: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	217) 5'-W C G T T W-3'	217) PyImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	218) 5'-W C G T A W-3'	218) PyImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
	219) 5'-W C G T G W-3'	219) PyImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
10	220) 5'-W C G T C W-3'	220) PyImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	221) 5'-W C G A T W-3'	221) PyImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyIm
15	222) 5'-W C G A A W-3'	222) PyImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyIm
	223) 5'-W C G A G W-3'	223) PyImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyIm
	224) 5'-W C G A C W-3'	224) PyImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyIm
20	225) 5'-W C G G T W-3'	225) PyImImHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	226) 5'-W C G G A W-3'	226) PyImImPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
25	227) 5'-W C G C T W-3'	227) PyImPyHp- γ -PyImPyIm
	228) 5'-W C G C A W-3'	228) PyImPyPy- γ -HpImPyIm
	G9) 5'-W C G G G W-3'	G9) PyImImIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
30	G10) 5'-W C G G C W-3'	G10) PyImImPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	G11) 5'-W C G C G W-3'	G11) PyImPyIm- γ -PyImPyIm
35	G12) 5'-W C G C C W-3'	G12) PyImPyPy- γ -ImImPyIm

TABLE 24: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCCNNW-3'

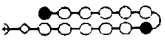
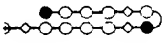
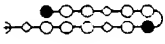
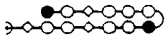
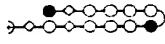
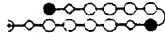
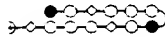
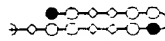
	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	229) 5'-W C C T T W-3'	229) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImIm
	230) 5'-W C-C T A W-3'	230) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImIm
	231) 5'-W C C T G W-3'	231) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImIm
10	232) 5'-W C C T C W-3'	232) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImIm
	233) 5'-W C C A T W-3'	233) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImIm
15	234) 5'-W C C A A W-3'	234) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImIm
	235) 5'-W C C A G W-3'	235) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImIm
	236) 5'-W C C A C W-3'	236) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImIm
20	237) 5'-W C C G T W-3'	237) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyImIm
	238) 5'-W C C G A W-3'	238) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyImIm
25	239) 5'-W C C C T W-3'	239) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImImIm
	240) 5'-W C C C A W-3'	240) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImImIm
	G13) 5'-W C C G G W-3'	G13) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyImIm
30	G14) 5'-W C C G C W-3'	G14) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyImIm
	G15) 5'-W C C C G W-3'	G15) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImImIm
35	G16) 5'-W C C C C W-3'	G16) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImImIm

EXAMPLE 9:**Aliphatic/Aromatic amino acid pairing for recognition of the DNA minor groove.**

Selective placement of an aliphatic β -alanine (β) residue paired side-by-side with either a pyrrole (Py) or imidazole (Im) aromatic amino acid is found to compensate for sequence composition effects for recognition of the minor groove of DNA by hairpin pyrrole-imidazole polyamides. A series of polyamides were prepared which contain pyrrole and imidazole aromatic amino acids, as well as γ -aminobutyric acid (γ) "turn" and β -alanine "spring" aliphatic amino acid residues. The binding affinities and specificities of these polyamides are regulated by the placement of paired β/β Py/ β and Im/ β residues. Quantitative footprint titrations demonstrate that replacing two Py/Py pairings in a 12-ring hairpin (6- γ -6) with two Py/ β

pairings affords 10-fold enhanced affinity and similar sequence specificity for an 8-bp target sequence.

Table 25 Equilibrium association constants (M^{-1}) for polyamides.^{a-c}

Polyamide	5'-TGTTAACA-3'	5'-TGTGAACA-3'	Specificity ^d
	2.5×10^9	3.9×10^8	6
	1.3×10^9	2.0×10^8	7
	1.7×10^{10}	2.7×10^9	6
	1.2×10^{11}	2.2×10^9	55
	6.6×10^9	2.5×10^8	26
	4.5×10^{10}	7.7×10^9	6
	2.7×10^{10}	5.7×10^9	5
	$\leq 1 \times 10^8$	$\leq 1 \times 10^8$	1

^aValues reported are the mean values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. ^bThe assays were carried out at 22 °C at pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂. ^cMatch site association constants and specificities higher than the parent hairpin are shown in boldtype. ^dSpecificity is calculated as $K_a(\text{match}) / K_a(\text{mismatch})$.

5

The 6-γ-6 hairpin ImPyImPyPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPyPyPy-β-Dp, which contains six consecutive amino acid pairings, is unable to discriminate a single-base-pair mismatch site 5'-TGTTAACA-3' from a 5'-TGTGAACA-3' match site. The hairpin polyamide Im-β-ImPyPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Py-β-Dp binds to the 8-bp match sequence 5'-TGTGAACA-3' with an equilibrium association constant of $K_a = 2.4 \times 10^{10} M^{-1}$ and > 48-fold specificity versus the 5'-TGTTAACA-3' single-base-pair mismatch site.

10

Table 26 Equilibrium association constants (M^{-1}) for polyamides.^{a-c}

Polyamide	5'-TGTTAACA-3'	5'-TGTGAACA-3'	Specificity ^d
	2.5×10^9	3.9×10^8	6
	6.6×10^9	2.5×10^8	26
	5×10^9	5×10^9	1
	$\leq 5 \times 10^8$	2.4×10^{10}	≥ 48

^a Values reported for 1, 5, and 10 are the mean values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. ^b The assays were carried out at 22 °C at pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂. ^c Match site association constants and specificities higher than parent hairpins are shown in boldtype. ^d Specificity is calculated as $K_a(\text{match}) / K_a(\text{mismatch})$.

Modeling indicates that the β -alanine residue relaxes ligand curvature, providing for optimal hydrogen bond formation between the floor of the minor groove and both Im-residues within the Im- β -Im polyamide subunit. This observation provided the basis for design of a hairpin polyamide, Im- β -ImPy- γ -Im- β -ImPy- β -Dp, which incorporates Im/ β pairings to recognize a "problematic" 5'-GCGC-3' sequence at subnanomolar concentrations.

Table 27 Equilibrium association constants (M^{-1}) for polyamides.^{a-b}

Polyamide	5'-TGCGCA-3'	5'-TGGCCA-3'	5'-TGGGGA-3'
	3.7×10^7	$< 10^7$	$< 10^7$
	3.7×10^9	1.4×10^8	1.1×10^8

^a Values reported are the mean values obtained from a minimum of three DNase I footprint titration experiments. ^b The assays were carried out at 22 °C at pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂.

These results identify Im/ β and β /Im pairings that respectively discriminate G•C and C•G from A•T/T•A as well as Py/ β and β /Py pairings that discriminate A•T/T•A from G•C/C•G. These aliphatic/aromatic amino acid pairings will facilitate the design of hairpin polyamides which recognize both a larger binding site size as well as a more diverse sequence repertoire.

EXAMPLE 10:

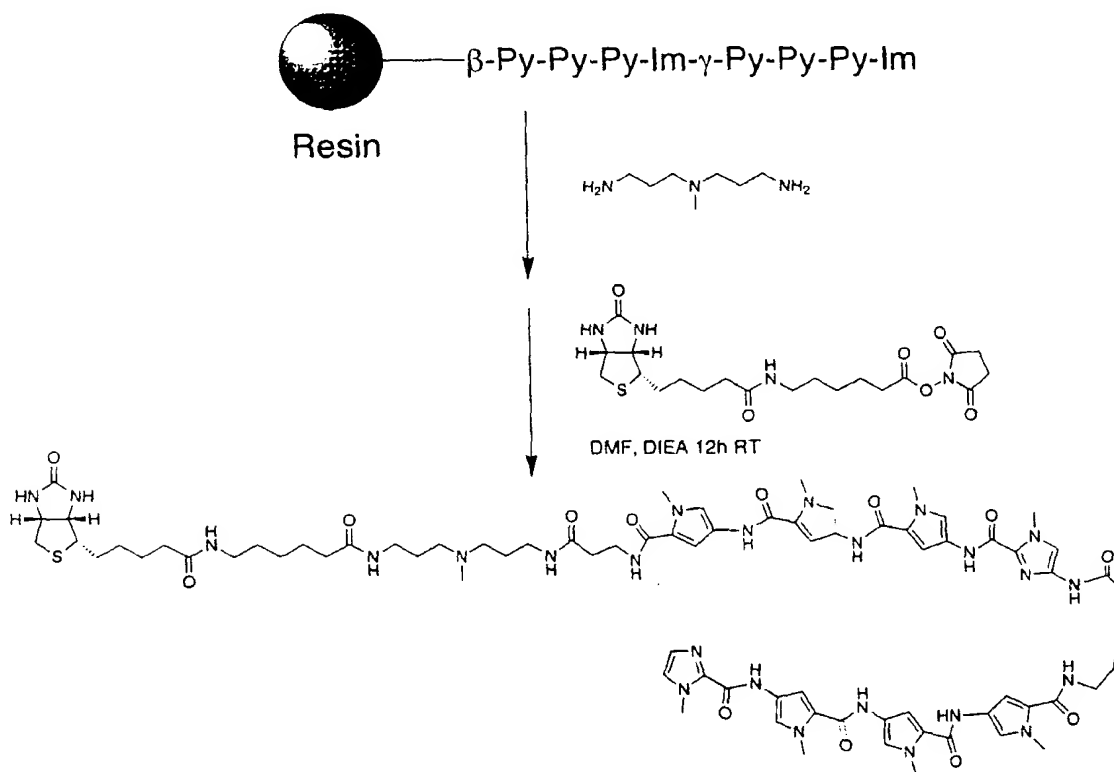
POLYAMIDE BIOTIN CONJUGATES

Bifunctional conjugates prepared between sequence specific DNA binding polyamides and biotin are useful for a variety of applications. First, such compounds can be readily attached

to a variety of matrices through the strong interaction of biotin with the protein streptavidin. Readily available streptavidin-derivatized matrices include magnetic beads for separations as well as resins for chromatography.

A number of such polyamide-biotin conjugates have been synthesized by solid phase synthetic methods outlined in detail above. Following resin cleavage with a variety of diamines, the polyamides were reacted with various biotin carboxylic acid derivatives to yield bifunctional conjugates. The bifunctional conjugates were purified by HPLC and characterized by MALDI-TOF mass spectroscopy and ^1H NMR.

The scheme for the synthesis of an exemplary biotin-polyamide conjugate is shown below.



The foregoing is intended to be illustrative of the present invention, but not limiting. Numerous variations and modifications of the present invention may be effected without departing from the true spirit and scope of the invention.

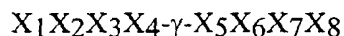
What is claimed is:

1. In a polyamide having at least three consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least three DNA base pairs in the minor groove of a duplex DNA sequence having at least one A•T or T•A DNA base pair, the improvement comprising selecting a Hp/Py carboxamide pair to correspond to a T•A base pair in the minor groove of the duplex DNA sequence or selecting a Py/Hp carboxamide pair to bind to an A•T DNA base pair in the minor groove of the duplex DNA sequence.
2. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein at least four consecutive carboxamide pairs bind to at least four DNA base pairs.
3. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein at least five consecutive carboxamide pairs bind to at least five DNA base pairs.
4. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein at least six consecutive carboxamide pairs bind to at least six DNA base pairs.
5. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the A•T or T•A base pair has a G•C or C•G base pair on either side.
6. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a regulatory sequence.
7. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a promoter sequence.
8. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a coding sequence.
9. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a non-coding sequence.
10. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the binding of the carboxamide pairs to the DNA base pairs modulates the expression of a gene.

11. A composition comprising an effective amount of the polyamide of claim 1 and a pharmacologically suitable excipient.

12. A diagnostic kit comprising the polyamide of claim 1.

13. A polyamide according to claim 1 having the formula:



wherein γ is -NH-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CONH- hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X₄/X₅, X₃/X₆, X₂/X₇, and X₁/X₈ represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs wherein at least one binding pair is Hp/Py or Py/Hp and the other binding pairs are selected from Py/Im Im/Py to correspond to the DNA base pair in the minor groove to be bound.

14. The polyamide of claim 13 wherein there is at least one β -alanine in a non- Hp containing binding pair.

15. The polyamide of claim 13 wherein dimethylaminopropylamide is covalently bound to X₁ or X₈.

16. A polyamide selected from those listed in Tables 9-24 as compounds 1 through 240.

17. A polyamide selected from shown in Fig. 4.

1/17

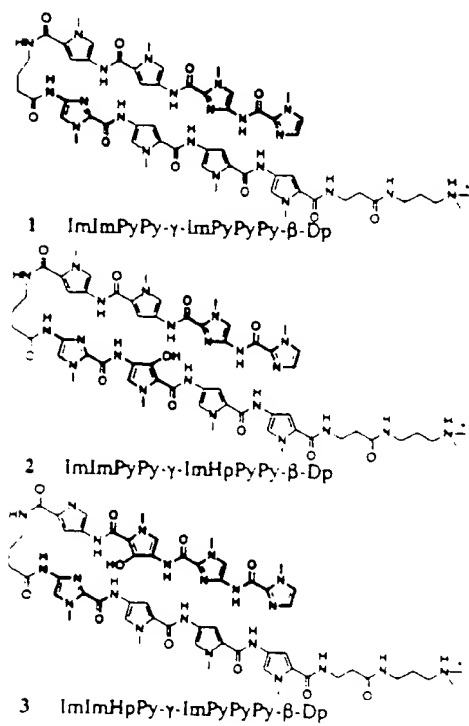
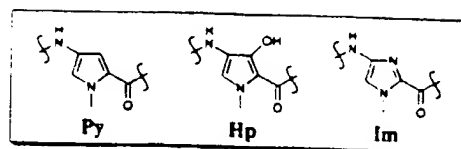


FIG. 1

2/17

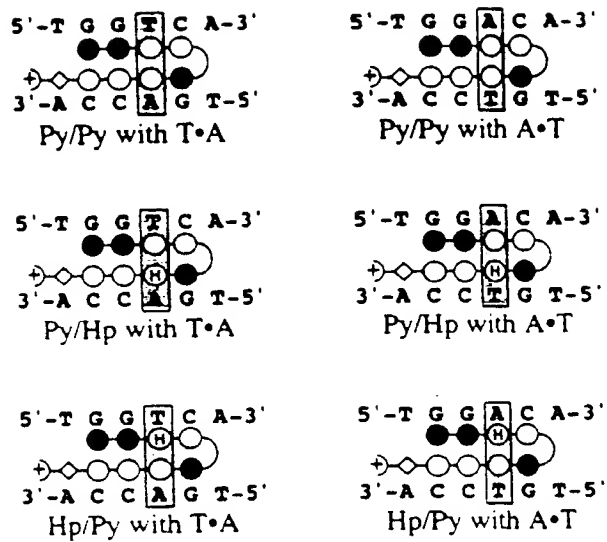


FIG. 2

3/17

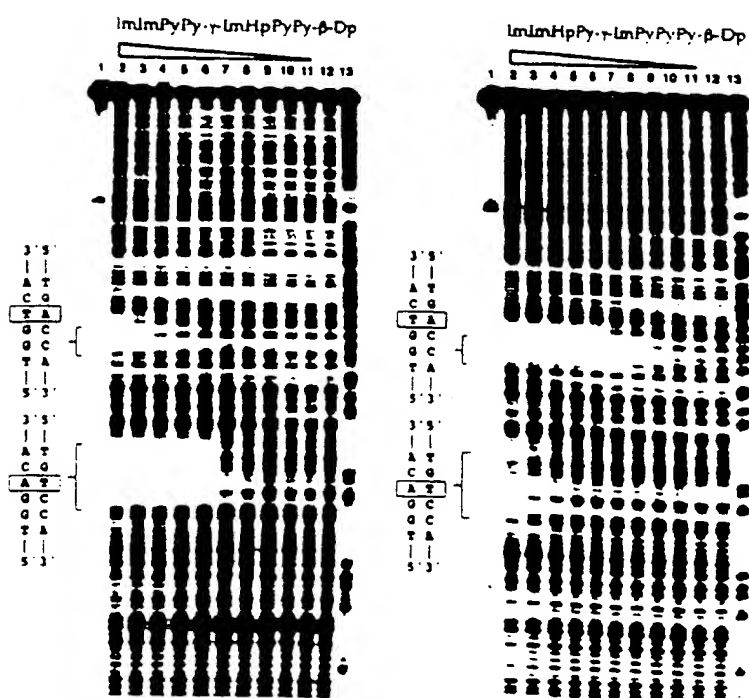
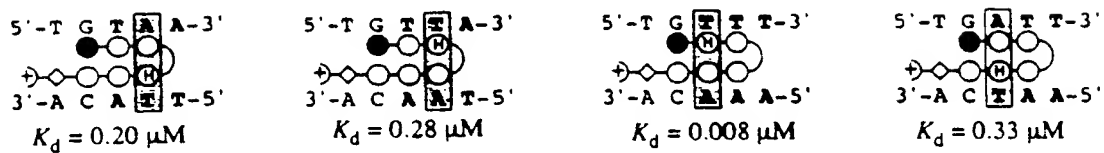


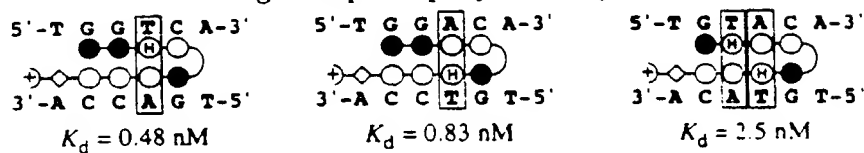
FIG. 3

4/17

6-Ring Hairpin Hp-Py-Im-Polyamides



8-Ring Hairpin Hp-Py-Im-Polyamides



10-Ring Hairpin Hp-Py-Im-Polyamides



FIG. 4

5/17

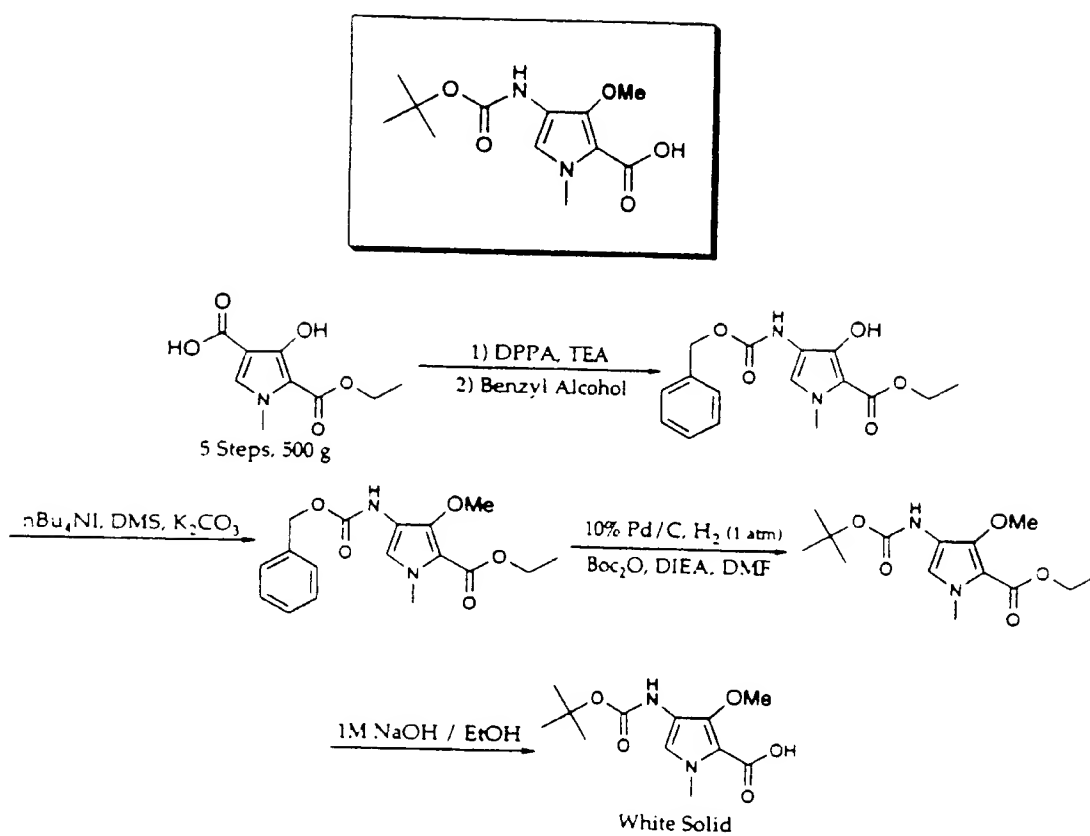


FIG. 5

6/17

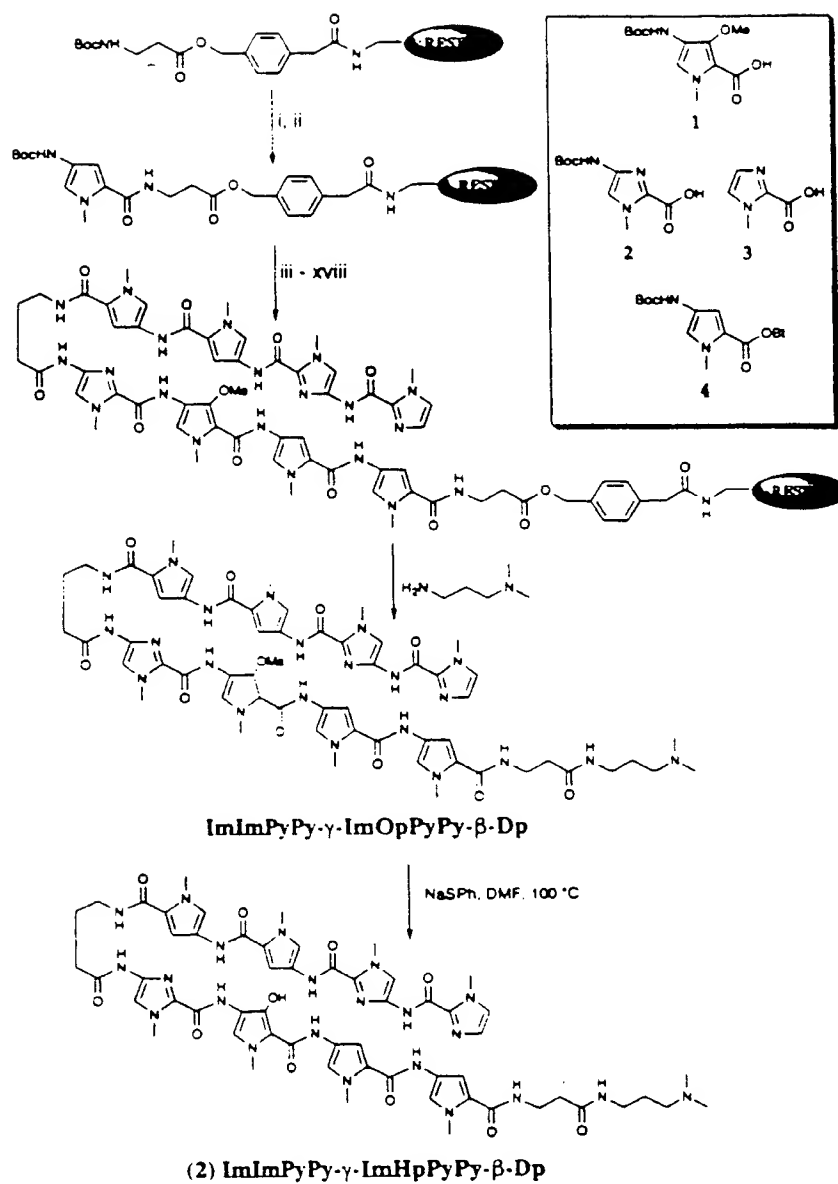


FIG. 6

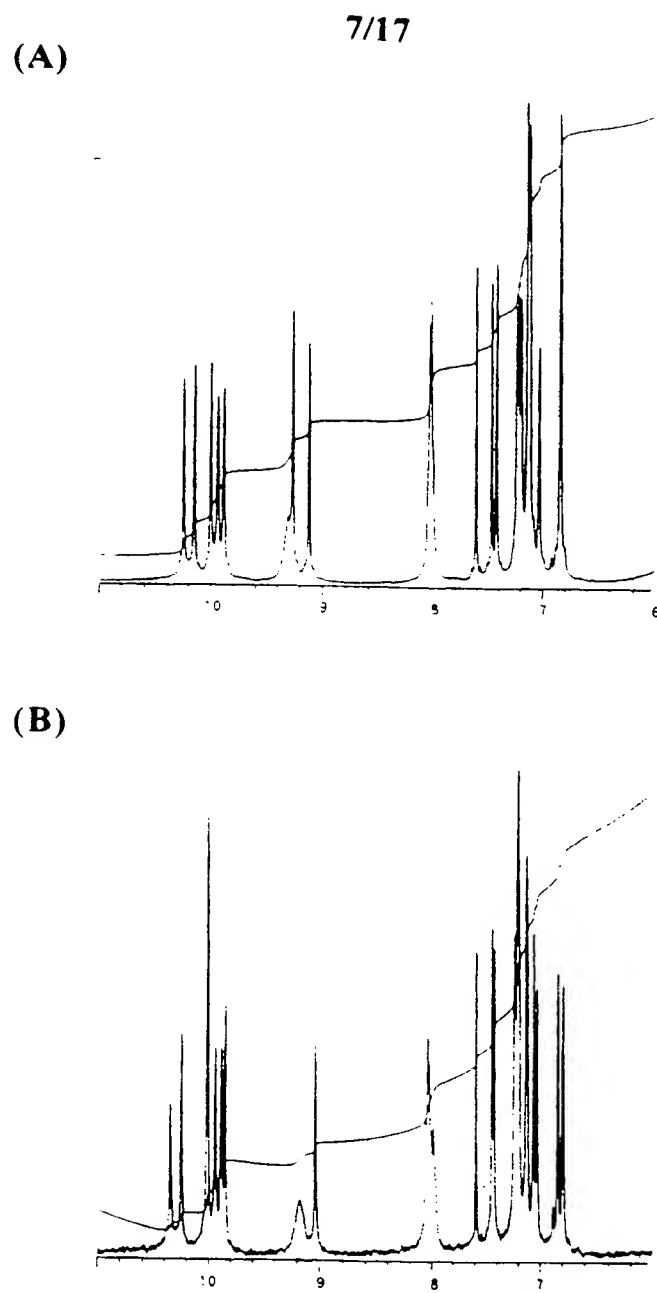


FIG. 7

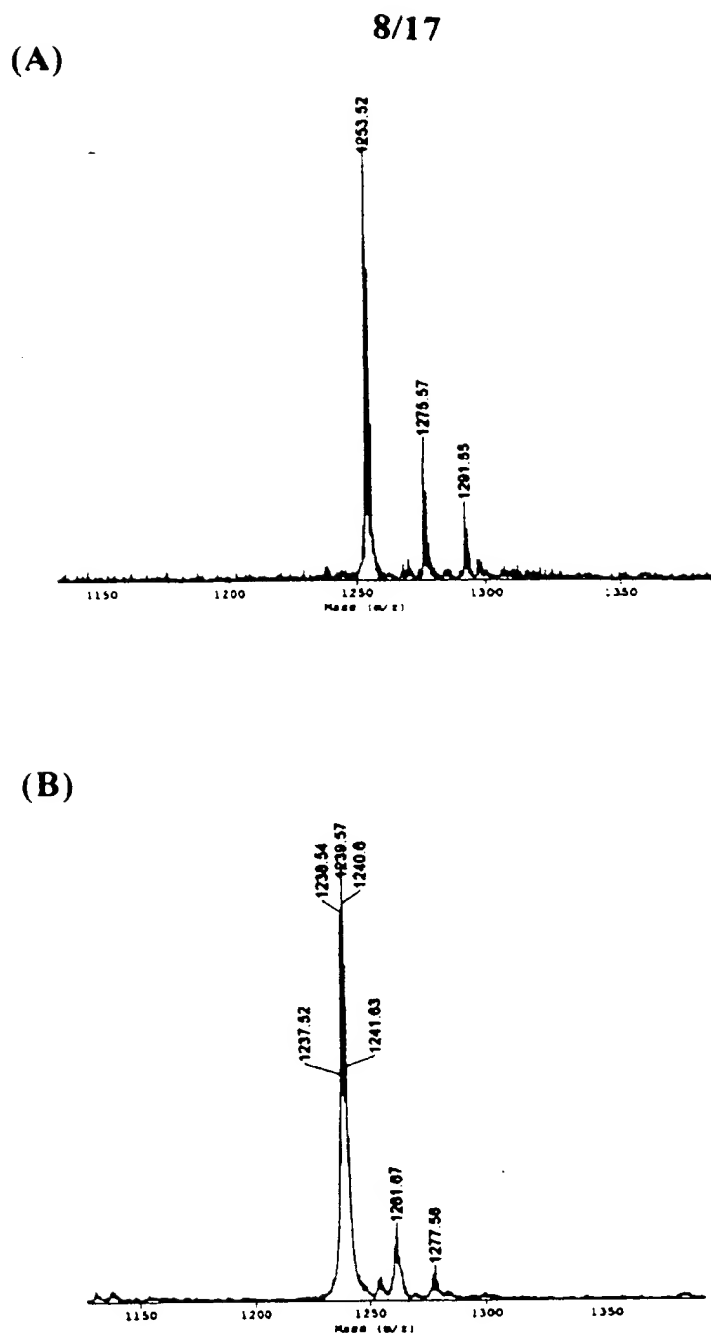
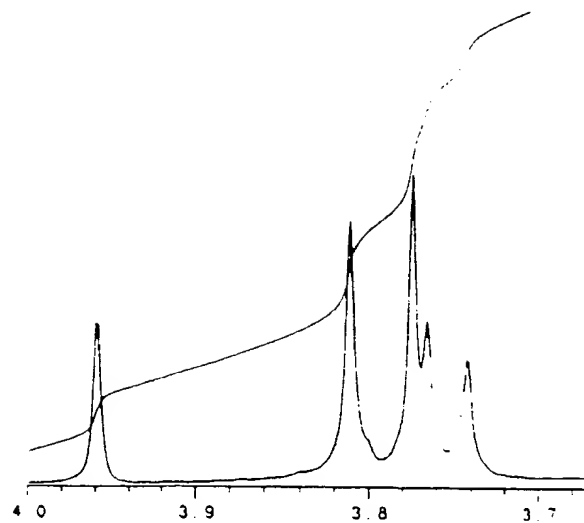


FIG. 8

9/17

(A)



(B)

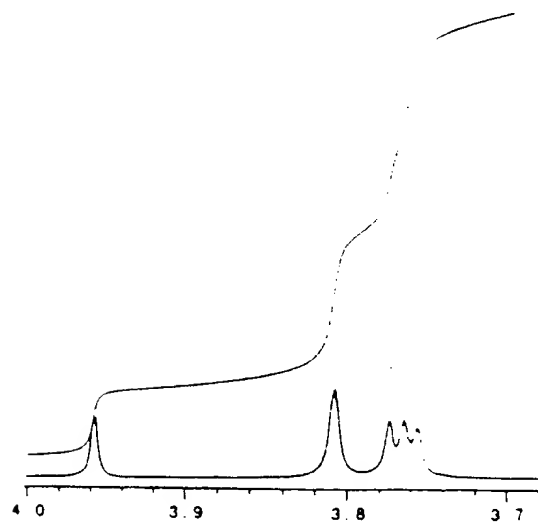
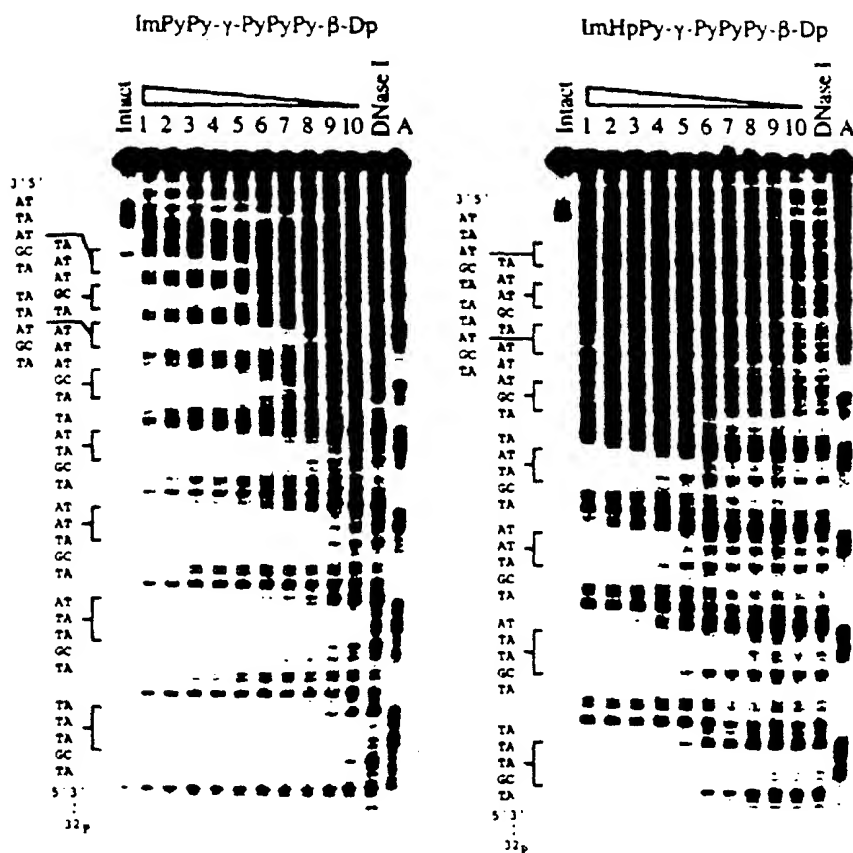


FIG. 9

10/17



11/17

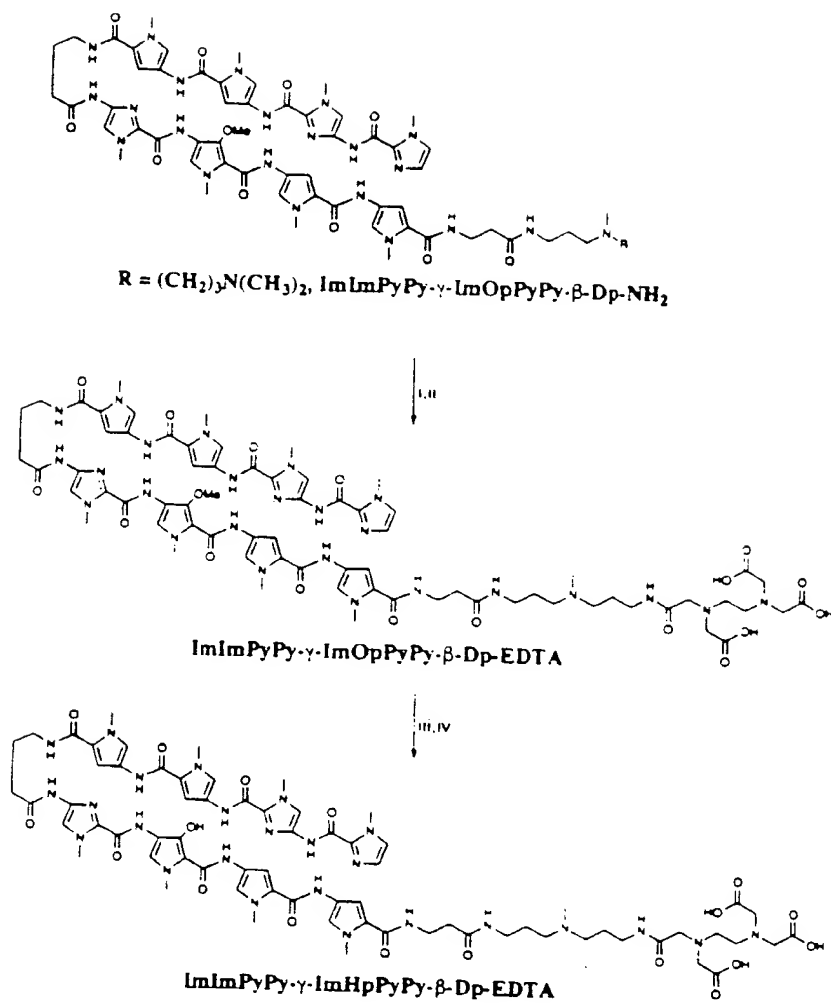
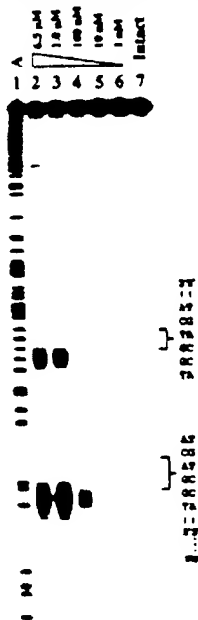


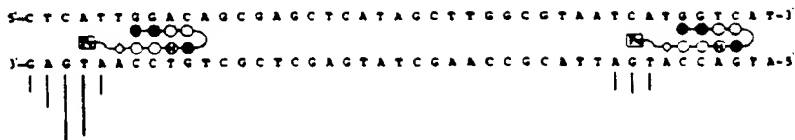
FIG. 11

12/17

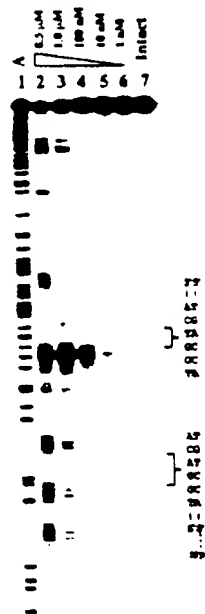
ImLmPyPy-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp-EDTA-Fe(II)



ImLmPyPy-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp-EDTA-Fe(II) 100 nM



ImLmHpPy-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-EDTA-Fe(II)



ImLmHpPy-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-EDTA-Fe(II) 100 nM

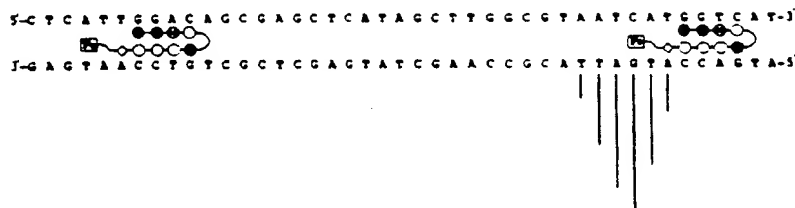


FIG. 12

13/17

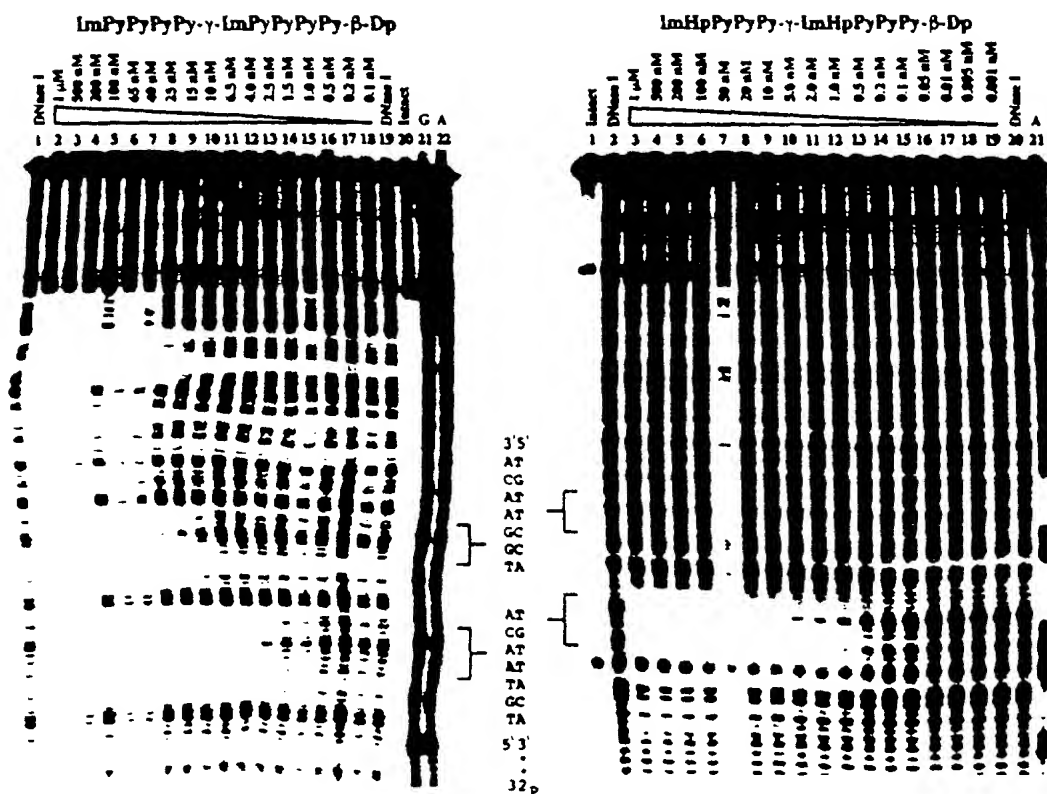


FIG. 13

14/17

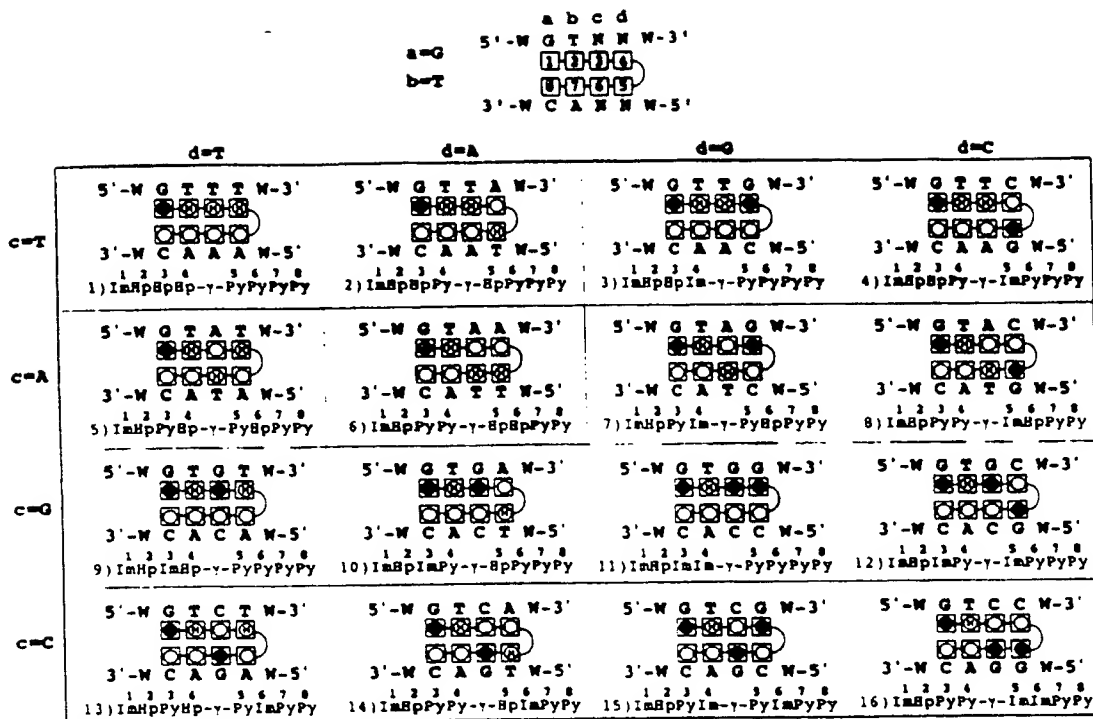


FIG. 14

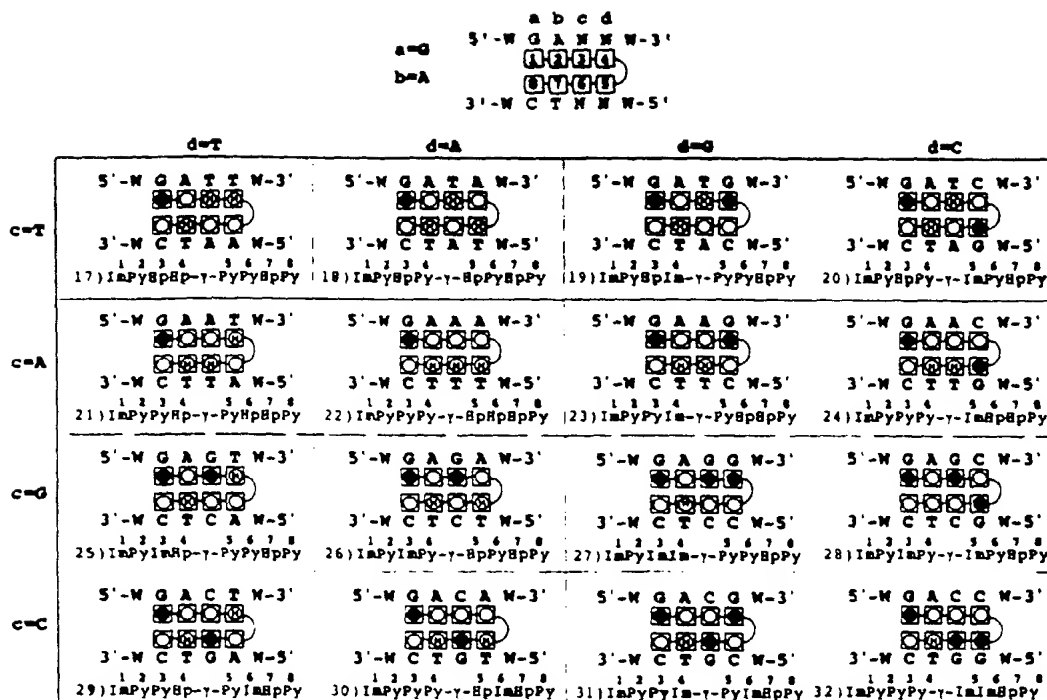


FIG.15

16/17

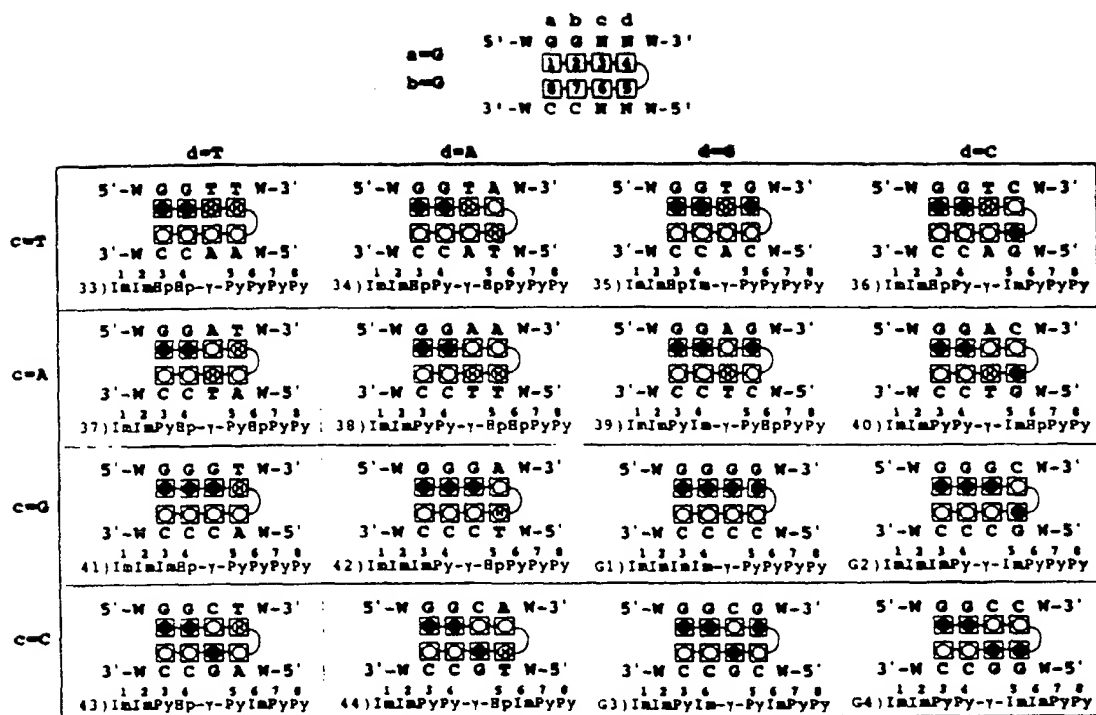


FIG. 16

17/17

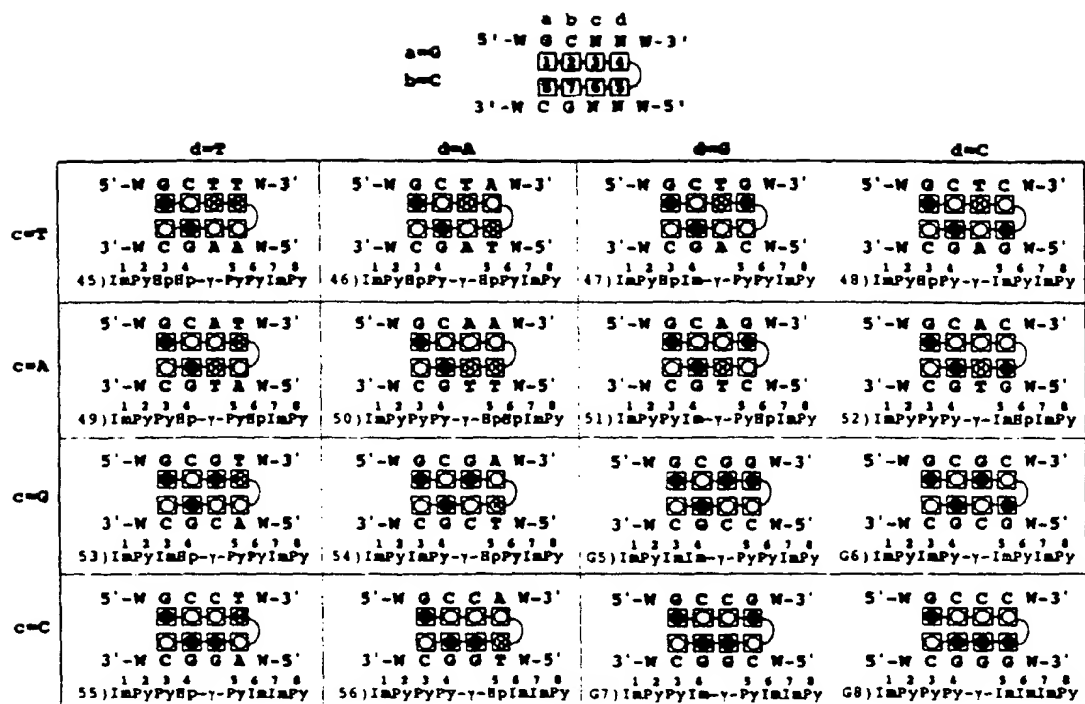


FIG. 17

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Application No
PCT/US 98/01006

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 C07D207/34 C07D233/90 A61K31/415 C07D403/14 C12Q1/68

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C07D A61K C12Q

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	J. W. TRAUGER ET AL: "Recognition of DNA by designed ligands at subnanomolar concentrations" NATURE, vol. 382, no. 6591, 8 August 1996, pages 559-561, XP002066256 cited in the application see the whole document ---	13-15,17
X	S.E.SWALLEY ET AL: "Recognition of a 5'-(A,T)GGG(A,T)2-3' sequence in the minor groove of DNA by an eight-ring hairpin polyamide" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 35, 4 September 1996, pages 8198-8206, XP002066377 see page 8198 - page 8202 --- -/--	13-15,17

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

28 May 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

12.06.98

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Voyiazoglou, D

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 98/01006

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	E. B. BAIRD ET AL: "Solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 26, July 1996, pages 6141-6146, XP000674666 cited in the application see page 6141 - page 6142 ---	13-15,17
A	M. E. PARKS ET AL: "Optimization of the hairpin polyamide design for recognition of the minor groove of DNA" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 26, July 1996, pages 6147-6152, XP000674668 see page 6147 - page 6148 ---	13-15,17
A	M. E. PARKS ET AL: "Recognition of 5'-(A,T)GG(AT)2-3' sequences in the minor groove of DNA by hairpin polyamides" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 26, July 1996, DC US, pages 6153-6159, XP000674667 see page 6153 - page 6155 ---	13-15,17
A	WO 96 05196 A (PHARMACIA) 22 February 1996 see claim 1 ---	13-15,17
P,X	S. E. SWALLEY ET AL: "Discrimination of 5'-GGGG-3', and 5'-GGCC-3' sequences in the minor groove of DNA by eight-ring hairpin polyamides" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 119, no. 30, 30 July 1997, DC US, pages 6953-6961, XP002066260 see page 6959 - page 6961 ---	13-15,17
P,X	W. L. WALKER ET AL: "Estimation of the DNA sequence discriminatory ability of hairpin-linked lexitropsins" PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, U.S.A., vol. 94, no. 11, May 1997, pages 5634-5639, XP002066261 see table 1 -----	13-15,17

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US 98/01006

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

2. ☒ Claims Nos.: 1-12, 16
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
The claims are so broad that for determining the scope of a meaningful international search due account has been taken of rule 33.3 PCT; special emphasis was put on the following subject-matter: claims 13-15, 17; pages 1-34; examples 1-8 and figures 1-11

3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.

2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.

3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:

4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 98/01006

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9605196 A	22-02-1996	AU 689623 B	02-04-1998
		AU 3113695 A	07-03-1996
		CA 2172629 A	22-02-1996
		CN 1131946 A	25-09-1996
		EP 0722446 A	24-07-1996
		FI 961506 A	05-06-1996
		HU 76267 A	28-07-1997
		JP 9504039 T	22-04-1997
		NO 961377 A	30-05-1996
		NZ 290404 A	24-04-1997
		PL 313821 A	22-07-1996
		ZA 9506590 A	18-03-1996



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : C07D 207/34, 233/90, A61K 31/415, C07D 403/14, C12Q 1/68		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/37066
			(43) International Publication Date: 27 August 1998 (27.08.98)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/01006		US Filed on 60/043,444 (CIP) 8 April 1997 (08.04.97)	
(22) International Filing Date: 21 January 1998 (21.01.98)			
(30) Priority Data: PCT/US97/03332 20 February 1997 (20.02.97) WO (34) Countries for which the regional or international application was filed: US et al. 60/043,444 8 April 1997 (08.04.97) US 60/042,022 16 April 1997 (16.04.97) US 08/837,524 21 April 1997 (21.04.97) US 08/853,522 8 May 1997 (08.05.97) US PCT/US97/12722 21 July 1997 (21.07.97) WO (34) Countries for which the regional or international application was filed: US et al.		(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): CALIFORNIA INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY [US/US]; Pasadena, CA 91125 (US). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): BAIRD, Eldon, E. [US/US]; 255 S. Madison Avenue #5, Pasadena, CA 91101 (US). DERVAN, Peter, B. [US/US]; 1235 St. Albans Road, San Marino, CA 91108 (US). (74) Agent: McDONNELL, John, J.; McDonnell Boehnen Hulbert & Berghoff, 300 South Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60606 (US).	
(63) Related by Continuation (CON) or Continuation-in-Part (CIP) to Earlier Applications US 08/853,522 (CIP) Filed on 8 May 1997 (08.05.97) US 08/837,524 (CIP) Filed on 21 April 1997 (21.04.97) US 08/607,078 (CIP) Filed on 26 February 1996 (26.02.96) US 60/042,022 (CIP) Filed on 16 April 1997 (16.04.97)		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GW, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
		Published With international search report.	
(54) Title: IMPROVED POLYAMIDES FOR BINDING IN THE MINOR GROOVE OF DOUBLE STRANDED DNA			
(57) Abstract The invention encompasses improved polyamides for binding to specific nucleotide sequences in the minor groove of double stranded DNA. The 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole/N-methylpyrrole carboxamide pair specifically recognizes the T.A base pair, while the N-methylpyrrole/3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole pair recognizes A.T nucleotide pairs. Similarly, an N-methylimidazole/N-methylpyrrole carboxamide pair specifically recognizes the G.C nucleotide pair, and the N-methylpyrrole/N-methylimidazole carboxamide pair recognizes the C.G nucleotide pair.			

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

IMPROVED POLYAMIDES FOR BINDING IN THE MINOR GROOVE OF DOUBLE STRANDED DNA

5 The U.S. Government has certain rights in this invention pursuant to Grant Nos. GM 26453, 27681 and 47530 awarded by the National Institute of Health.

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

10 This application is a continuation-in-part of PCT/US97/03332 filed February 20, 1997, Serial No. 08/853,522 filed May 8, 1997 and PCT/US 97/12722 filed July 21, 1997 which are continuation-in-part applications of Serial No. 08/837,524, filed April 21, 1997, Serial No. 08/607,078, filed February 26, 1996, provisional application Serial No. 60/042,022, filed April 16, 1997 and provisional application Serial No. 60/043,444, filed April 8, 1997.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

20 This invention relates to polyamides which bind to predetermined sequences in the minor groove of double stranded DNA.

Description of the Related Art

25 The design of synthetic ligands that read the information stored in the DNA double helix has been a long standing goal of chemistry. Cell-permeable small molecules which target predetermined DNA sequences are useful for the regulation of gene-expression. Oligodeoxynucleotides that recognize the major groove of double-helical DNA via triple-helix formation bind to a broad range of sequences with high affinity and specificity. Although
30 oligonucleotides and their analogs have been shown to interfere with gene expression, the triple helix approach is limited to purine tracks and suffers from poor cellular uptake. The development of pairing rules for minor groove binding polyamides derived from N-methylpyrrole (Py) and N-methylimidazole (Im) amino acids provides another code to control sequence specificity. An Im/Py pair distinguishes G•C from C•G and both of these from A•T
35 or T•A base pairs. Wade, W.S., Mrksich, M. & Dervan, P.B. describes the design of peptides that bind in the minor groove of DNA at 5'-(A,T)G(A,T)C(A,T)-3' sequences by a dimeric side-by-side motif. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **114**, 8783-8794 (1992); Mrksich, M. *et al.* describes antiparallel side-by-side motif for sequence specific-recognition in the minor groove of DNA by the designed peptide 1-methylimidazole-2-carboxamidenetropsin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*
40 **89**, 7586-7590 (1992); Trauger, J.W., Baird, E. E. Dervan, P.B. describes the recognition of DNA by designed ligands at subnanomolar concentrations. *Nature* **382**, 559-561 (1996). A

Py/Py pair specifies A•T from G•C but does not distinguish A•T from T•A. Pelton, J.G. & Wemmer, D.E. describes the structural characterization of a 2-1 distamycin A-d(CGCAAATTTGGC) complex by two-dimensional NMR. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**, 5723-5727 (1989); White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P.B. Describes the effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* **35**, 6147-6152 (1996); White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the pairing rules for recognition in the minor groove of DNA by pyrrole-imidazole polyamides. *Chem. & Biol.* **4**, 569-578 (1997); White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P.B. describes the 5'-3' N-C orientation preference for polyamide binding in the minor groove. In order to break this degeneracy, a new aromatic amino acid, 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole (Hp) incorporated into a polyamide and paired opposite Py, has been found to discriminate A•T from T•A. The replacement of a single hydrogen atom on the pyrrole with a hydroxy group in a Hp/Py pair regulates affinity and specificity of a polyamide by an order of magnitude. Utilizing Hp together with Py and Im in polyamides to form four aromatic amino acid pairs (Im/Py, Py/Im, Hp/Py, and Py/Hp) provides a code to distinguish all four Watson-Crick base pairs in the minor groove of DNA.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention encompasses improved polyamides for binding to the minor groove of double stranded ("duplex") DNA. The polyamides are in the form of a hairpin comprising two groups of at least three consecutive carboxamide residues, the two groups covalently linked by an aliphatic amino acid residue, preferably γ -aminobutyric acid or 2,4 diaminobutyric acid, the consecutive carboxamide residues of the first group pairing in an antiparallel manner with the consecutive carboxamide residues of the second group in the minor groove of double stranded DNA. The improvement relates to the inclusion of a binding pair of Hp/Py carboxamides in the polyamide to bind to a T•A base pair in the minor groove of double stranded DNA or Py/Hp carboxamide binding pair in the polyamide to bind to an A•T base pair in the minor groove of double stranded DNA. The improved polyamides have at least three consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least three DNA base pairs in the minor groove of a duplex DNA sequence that has at least one A•T or T•A DNA base pair, the improvement comprising selecting a Hp/Py carboxamide pair to correspond to a T•A base pair in the minor groove or a Py/Hp carboxamide pair to bind to an A•T DNA base pair in the minor groove. Preferably the binding of the carboxamide pairs to the DNA base pairs modulates the expression of a gene.

In one preferred embodiment, the polyamide includes at least four consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least four base pairs in a duplex DNA sequence. In another preferred embodiment, the polyamide includes at least five consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least five base pairs in a duplex DNA sequence. In yet another preferred

embodiment, the polyamide includes at least six consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least six base pairs in a duplex DNA sequence. In one preferred embodiment, the improved polyamides have four carboxamide binding pairs that will distinguish A•T, T•A, C•G and G•C base pairs in the minor groove of a duplex DNA sequence. The duplex DNA sequence can be a regulatory sequence, such as a promoter sequence or an enhancer sequence, or a gene sequence, such as a coding sequence or a non-coding sequence. Preferably, the duplex DNA sequence is a promoter sequence.

The preparation and the use of polyamides for binding in the minor groove of double stranded DNA are extensively described in the art. This invention is an improvement of the existing technology that uses 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole to provide carboxamide binding pairs for DNA binding polyamides.

The invention encompasses polyamides having γ -aminobutyric acid or a substituted γ -aminobutyric acid to form a hairpin with a member of each carboxamide pairing on each side of it. Preferably the substituted γ -aminobutyric acid is a chiral substituted γ -aminobutyric acid such as (R)-2,4-diaminobutyric acid. In addition, the polyamides may contain an aliphatic amino acid residue, preferably a β -alanine residue, in place of a non-Hp carboxamide. The β -alanine residue is represented in formulas as β . The β -alanine residue becomes a member of a carboxamide binding pair. The invention further includes the substitution as a β • β binding pair for non-Hp containing binding pair. Thus, binding pairs in addition to the Hp/Py and Py/Hp are Im/ β , β /Im, Py/ β , β /Py, and β / β .

The polyamides of the invention can have additional moieties attached covalently to the polyamide. Preferably the additional moieties are attached as substituents at the amino terminus of the polyamide, the carboxy terminus of the polyamide, or at a chiral (R)-2,4-diaminobutyric acid residue. Suitable additional moieties include a detectable labeling group such as a dye, biotin or a hapten. Other suitable additional moieties are DNA reactive moieties that provide for sequence specific cleavage of the duplex DNA.

Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1 illustrates the structure of polyamide 1, 2, and 3.

Figure 2 illustrates the pairing of polyamides to DNA base pairs.

Figure 3 illustrates the DNase footprint titration of compounds 2 and 3.

Figure 4 illustrates a list of the structures of representative Hp containing polyamides.

Figure 5 illustrates the synthesis of a protected Hp monomer for solid phase synthesis.

Figure 6 illustrates the solid phase synthesis of polyamide 2.

Figure 7 illustrates the ¹H-NMR characterization of polyamide 2.

Figure 8 illustrates the Mass spectral characterization of polyamide 2.

Figure 9 illustrates ¹H-NMR characterization of synthesis purity.

Figure 10 illustrates DNaseI footprint titration experiment.

Figure 11 illustrates the synthesis of bifunctional conjugate of polyamide 2.

5 Figure 12 illustrates affinity cleaving evidence for oriented hairpin formation.

Figure 13 illustrates increased sequence specificity of Hp/Py containing polyamides.

Figure 14 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGTNNW-3' sites.

Figure 15 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGANNW-3' sites.

Figure 16 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGGNNW-3' sites.

10 Figure 17 illustrates 8-ring hairpin polyamides which target 5'-WGCNNW-3' sites.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within this application, unless otherwise stated, definitions of the terms and illustration
15 of the techniques of this application may be found in any of several well-known references such
as: Sambrook, J., *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor
Laboratory Press (1989); Goeddel, D., *ed.*, *Gene Expression Technology, Methods in
Enzymology*, **185**, Academic Press, San Diego, CA (1991); "Guide to Protein Purification" in
Deutscher, M.P., *ed.*, *Methods in Enzymology*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA (1989); Innis, *et*
20 *al.*, *PCR Protocols: A Guide to Methods and Applications*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA
(1990); Freshney, R.I., *Culture of Animal Cells: A Manual of Basic Technique*, 2nd Ed., Alan
Liss, Inc. New York, NY (1987); Murray, E.J., *ed.*, *Gene Transfer and Expression Protocols*,
pp. 109-128, The Humana Press Inc., Clifton, NJ and Lewin, B., *Genes VI*, Oxford University
Press, New York (1997).

25

For the purposes of this application, a *promoter* is a regulatory sequence of DNA that is
involved in the binding of RNA polymerase to initiate transcription of a gene. A *gene* is a
segment of DNA involved in producing a peptide, polypeptide or protein, including the coding
region, non-coding regions preceding ("leader") and following ("trailer") the coding region, as
30 well as intervening non-coding sequences ("introns") between individual coding segments
("exons"). Coding refers to the representation of amino acids, start and stop signals in a three
base "triplet" code. Promoters are often upstream ("5' to") the transcription initiation site of
the corresponding gene. Other regulatory sequences of DNA in addition to promoters are
known, including sequences involved with the binding of transcription factors, including
35 response elements that are the DNA sequences bound by inducible factors. Enhancers comprise

yet another group of regulatory sequences of DNA that can increase the utilization of promoters, and can function in either orientation (5'-3' or 3'-5') and in any location (upstream or downstream) relative to the promoter. Preferably, the regulatory sequence has a positive activity, i.e., binding of an endogeneous ligand (e.g. a transcription factor) to the regulatory sequence increases transcription, thereby resulting in increased expression of the corresponding target gene. In such a case, interference with transcription by binding a polyamide to a regulatory sequence would reduce or abolish expression of a gene.

The promoter may also include or be adjacent to a regulatory sequence known in the art as a *silencer*. A silencer sequence generally has a negative regulatory effect on expression of the gene. In such a case, expression of a gene may be increased directly by using a polyamide to prevent binding of a factor to a silencer regulatory sequence or indirectly, by using a polyamide to block transcription of a factor to a silencer regulatory sequence.

It is to be understood that the polyamides of this invention bind to double stranded DNA in a sequence specific manner. The function of a segment of DNA of a given sequence, such as 5'-TATAAA-3', depends on its position relative to other functional regions in the DNA sequence. In this case, if the sequence 5'-TATAAA-3' on the coding strand of DNA is positioned about 30 base pairs upstream of the transcription start site, the sequence forms part of the promoter region (Lewin, *Genes VI*, pp. 831-835). On the other hand, if the sequence 5'-TATAAA-3' is downstream of the transcription start site in a coding region and in proper register with the reading frame, the sequence encodes the tyrosyl and lysyl amino acid residues (Lewin, *Genes VI*, pp. 213-215).

While not being held to one hypothesis, it is believed that the binding of the polyamides of this invention modulate gene expression by altering the binding of DNA binding proteins, such as RNA polymerase, transcription factors, TBF, TFIIB and other proteins. The effect on gene expression of polyamide binding to a segment of double stranded DNA is believed to be related to the function, e.g., promoter, of that segment of DNA.

It is to be understood by one skilled in the art that the improved polyamides of the present invention may bind to any of the above-described DNA sequences or any other sequence having a desired effect upon expression of a gene. In addition, U.S. Patent No.

5,578,444 describes numerous promoter targeting sequences from which base pair sequences for targeting an improved polyamide of the present invention may be identified.

It is generally understood by those skilled in the art that the basic structure of DNA in a living cell includes both *major* and a *minor groove*. For the purposes of describing the present invention, the *minor groove* is the narrow groove of DNA as illustrated in common molecular biology references such as Lewin, B., *Genes VI*, Oxford University Press, New York (1997).

To affect gene expression in a cell, which may include causing an increase or a decrease in gene expression, a effective quantity of one or more polyamide is contacted with the cell and internalized by the cell. The cell may be contacted *in vivo* or *in vitro*. Effective extracellular concentrations of polyamides that can modulate gene expression range from about 10 nanomolar to about 1 micromolar. Gottesfeld, J.M., *et al.*, *Nature* **387** 202-205 (1997). To determine effective amounts and concentrations of polyamides *in vitro*, a suitable number of cells is plated on tissue culture plates and various quantities of one or more polyamide are added to separate wells. Gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored in the cells or medium by detecting the amount of the protein gene product present as determined by various techniques utilizing specific antibodies, including ELISA and western blot. Alternatively, gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored by detecting the amount of messenger RNA present as determined by various techniques, including northern blot and RT-PCR.

Similarly, to determine effective amounts and concentrations of polyamides for *in vivo* administration, a sample of body tissue or fluid, such as plasma, blood, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, saliva, or biopsy of skin, muscle, liver, brain or other appropriate tissue source is analyzed. Gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored by detecting the amount of the protein gene product present as determined by various techniques utilizing specific antibodies, including ELISA and western blot. Alternatively, gene expression following exposure to a polyamide can be monitored by the detecting the amount of messenger RNA present as determined by various techniques, including northern blot and RT-PCR.

The polyamides of this invention may be formulated into diagnostic and therapeutic compositions for *in vivo* or *in vitro* use. Representative methods of formulation may be found

in *Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy*, 19th ed., Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA (1995).

For *in vivo* use, the polyamides may be incorporated into a physiologically acceptable pharmaceutical composition that is administered to a patient in need of treatment or an animal for medical or research purposes. The polyamide composition comprises pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, adjuvants, stabilizers, and vehicles. The composition may be in solid, liquid, gel, or aerosol form. The polyamide composition of the present invention may be administered in various dosage forms orally, parentally, by inhalation spray, rectally, or topically. The term parenteral as used herein includes, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, intrasternal, infusion techniques or intraperitoneally.

The selection of the precise concentration, composition, and delivery regimen is influenced by, *inter alia*, the specific pharmacological properties of the particular selected compound, the intended use, the nature and severity of the condition being treated or diagnosed, the age, weight, gender, physical condition and mental acuity of the intended recipient as well as the route of administration. Such considerations are within the purview of the skilled artisan. Thus, the dosage regimen may vary widely, but can be determined routinely using standard methods.

Polyamides of the present invention are also useful for detecting the presence of double stranded DNA of a specific sequence for diagnostic or preparative purposes. The sample containing the double stranded DNA can be contacted by polyamide linked to a solid substrate, thereby isolating DNA comprising a desired sequence. Alternatively, polyamides linked to a suitable detectable marker, such as biotin, a hapten, a radioisotope or a dye molecule, can be contacted by a sample containing double stranded DNA.

The design of bifunctional sequence specific DNA binding molecules requires the integration of two separate entities: recognition and functional activity. Polyamides that specifically bind with subnanomolar affinity to the minor groove of a predetermined sequence of double stranded DNA are linked to a functional molecule, providing the corresponding bifunctional conjugates useful in molecular biology, genomic sequencing, and human medicine. Polyamides of this invention can be conjugated to a variety of functional molecules, which can be independently chosen from but is not limited to arylboronic acids, biotins, polyhistidines

comprised from about 2 to 8 amino acids, haptens to which an antibody binds, solid phase supports, oligodeoxynucleotides, N-ethylnitrosourea, fluorescein, bromoacetamide, iodoacetamide, DL- α -lipoic acid, acridine, captothesin, pyrene, mitomycin, texas red, anthracene, anthranilic acid, avidin, DAPI, isosulfan blue, malachite green, psoralen, ethyl red, 4-(psoraen-8-yloxy)-butyrate, tartaric acid, (+)- α -tocopheral, psoralen, EDTA, methidium, acridine, Ni(II)•Gly-Gly-His, TO, Dansyl, pyrene, N-bromoacetamide, and gold particles. Such bifunctional polyamides are useful for DNA affinity capture, covalent DNA modification, oxidative DNA cleavage, DNA photocleavage. Such bifunctional polyamides are useful for DNA detection by providing a polyamide linked to a detectable label. Detailed instructions for synthesis of such bifunctional polyamides can be found in copending U.S. provisional application 60/043,444, the teachings of which are incorporated by reference.

DNA complexed to a labeled polyamide can then be determined using the appropriate detection system as is well known to one skilled in the art. For example, DNA associated with a polyamide linked to biotin can be detected by a streptavidin / alkaline phosphatase system.

The present invention also describes a diagnostic system, preferably in kit form, for assaying for the presence of the double stranded DNA sequence bound by the polyamide of this invention in a body sample, such brain tissue, cell suspensions or tissue sections, or body fluid samples such as CSF, blood, plasma or serum, where it is desirable to detect the presence, and preferably the amount, of the double stranded DNA sequence bound by the polyamide in the sample according to the diagnostic methods described herein.

The diagnostic system includes, in an amount sufficient to perform at least one assay, a specific polyamide as a separately packaged reagent. Instructions for use of the packaged reagent(s) are also typically included. As used herein, the term "package" refers to a solid matrix or material such as glass, plastic (e.g., polyethylene, polypropylene or polycarbonate), paper, foil and the like capable of holding within fixed limits a polyamide of the present invention. Thus, for example, a package can be a glass vial used to contain milligram quantities of a contemplated polyamide or it can be a microliter plate well to which microgram quantities of a contemplated polypamide have been operatively affixed, i.e., linked so as to be capable of being bound by the target DNA sequence. "Instructions for use" typically include a tangible expression describing the reagent concentration or at least one assay method parameter such as the relative amounts of reagent and sample to be admixed, maintenance time

periods for reagent or sample admixtures, temperature, buffer conditions and the like. A diagnostic system of the present invention preferably also includes a detectable label and a detecting or indicating means capable of signaling the binding of the contemplated polyamide of the present invention to the target DNA sequence. As noted above, numerous detectable labels, such as biotin, and detecting or indicating means, such as enzyme-linked (direct or indirect) streptavidin, are well known in the art.

Figure 1 shows representative structures of polyamides. ImImPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp (1), ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp (2), and ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp (3). (Hp = 3-hydroxy-N-methylpyrrole, Im = N-methylimidazole, Py = N-methylpyrrole, β = β -alanine, γ = γ -aminobutyric acid, Dp = Dimethylaminopropylamide). Polyamides were synthesized by solid phase methods using Boc-protected 3-methoxypyrrole, imidazole, and pyrrole aromatic amino acids, cleaved from the support by aminolysis, deprotected with sodium thiophenoxide, and purified by reversed phase HPLC. Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. The identity and purity of the polyamides were verified by ^1H NMR, analytical HPLC, and matrix-assisted laser-desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS-monoisotopic): 1 1223.6 (1223.6 calculated), 2 1239.6 (1239.6 calculated); 3 1239.6 (1239.6 calculated).

Figure 2 illustrates binding models for polyamides 1-3 in complex with 5'-TGGTCA-3' and 5'-TGGACA-3' (A•T and T•A in fourth position highlighted). Filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid, the diamond represents β -alanine, and the + represents the positively charged dimethylaminopropylamide tail group.

Figure 3 shows quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments with polyamides 2 and 3 on the 3' ^{32}P labeled 250-bp pJK6 *EcoRI/PvuII* restriction fragment. Lane 1, intact DNA; lanes 2-11 DNase I digestion products in the presence of 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 2, 1, 0.5, 0.2, 0.1 nM polyamide, respectively; lane 12, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lane 13, adenine-specific chemical sequencing. Iverson, B. L. & Dervan, P. B. describes an adenine-specific DNA chemical sequencing reaction. *Methods Enzymol.* **15**, 7823-7830 (1987).

All reactions were done in a total volume of 400 μ L. A polyamide stock solution or H₂O was added to an assay buffer containing radiolabeled restriction fragment, with the final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 4-12 h at 22 °C before initiation of footprinting reactions.

Footprinting reactions, separation of cleavage products, and data analysis were carried out as described. White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. Effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* 35, 6147-6152 (1996).

Figure 4 shows the structure and equilibrium dissociation constant for numerous compounds of the present invention. Polyamides are shown in complex with their respective match site. Filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole (Im) and pyrrole (Py) rings, respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole (Hp), the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid (γ), the diamond represents β -alanine (β), and the + represents the positively charged dimethylaminopropylamide tail group (Dp). The equilibrium dissociation constants are the average values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. The standard deviation for each set is less than 15% of the reported number. Assays were carried out in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂ at pH 7.0 and 22°C.

Figure 5 shows the synthetic scheme for 3-O-methyl-N-Boc protected pyrrole-2-carboxylate. The hydroxypyrrole monoester can be prepared in 0.5 kg quantity using published procedures on enlarged scale.

Figure 6 shows the solid phase synthetic scheme for ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp starting from commercially available Boc- β -Pam-Resin: (i) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (ii) Boc-Py-OBt, DIEA, DMF; (iii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (iv) Boc-Py-OBt, DIEA, DMF; (v) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (vi) Boc-3-OMe-Py-OH, HBTU, DMF, DIEA; (vii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (viii) Boc-Im-OH, DCC, HOBt; (ix) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (x) Boc- γ -aminobutyric acid, DIEA, DMF; (xi) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xii) Boc-Py-OBt, DIEA, DMF; (xiii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xiv) Boc-Py-OBt, DMF, DIEA; (xv) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xvi) Boc-Im-OH, DCC, HOBt (xvii) 80% TFA/DCM, 0.4 M PhSH; (xviii) imidazole-2-carboxylic acid, HBTU, DIEA; (xix) dimethylaminopropylamine, 55 °C, 18h. Purification by reversed phase HPLC provides ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp. (Op = 3-methoxypyrrole). Treatment of the 3-methoxypyrrole polyamide with thiophenol, NaH, DMF, at 100 °C for 120 min provides polyamide 2 after reverse phase HPLC purification.

Figure 7 shows the aromatic region from 7-11 ppm for the ¹H-NMR spectrum determined at 300 MHz for ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp and ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp. This region of the spectrum may be used to determine compound identity and purity.

5 Figure 8 shows the MALDI-TOF mass spectrum determined in positive ion mode with a monoisotopic detector for the polyamides for ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp and ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp. This spectrum may be used to determine compound identity and purity.

10 Figure 9 shows the methyl group region from 3.5-4.0 ppm for the ¹H-NMR spectrum determined at 300 MHz for ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp and ImPyPy-γ-HpPyPy-β-Dp. This region of the spectrum may be used to directly follow the progress for conversion of 3-methoxypyrrole to 3-hydroxypyrrole.

15 Fig. 10 shows quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments with the polyamides ImPyPy-γ-PyHpPy-β-Dp and ImHpPy-γ-PyPyPy-β-Dp on the 3'-³²P labeled 370-bp pDEH1 *EcoRI/PvuII* restriction fragment. Intact lane, labeled restriction fragment no polyamide or DNase I added; lanes 1-10, DNase I digestion products in the presence of 10 μM, 5 μM, 2 μM, 1 μM, 500 nM, 200 nM, 100 nM, 50 nM, 20 nM, 10 nM ImPyPy-γ-PyPyPy-β-Dp, respectively or 1 μM, 500 nM, 200 nM, 100 nM, 50 nM, 20 nM, 10 nM, 5 nM, 2 nM, 1 nM ImHpPy-γ-PyPyPy-β-Dp, respectively; DNase I lane, DNase I digestion products in the absence of
20 polyamide; A lane, adenine-specific chemical sequencing. Iverson, B. L. & Dervan, P. B. describes an adenine-specific DNA chemical sequencing reaction. *Methods Enzymol.* 15, 7823-7830 (1987). All reactions were done in a total volume of 40 μL. A polyamide stock solution or H₂O was added to an assay buffer containing radiolabeled restriction fragment, with the final
25 solution conditions of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 4-12 h at 22 °C before initiation of footprinting reactions. Footprinting reactions, separation of cleavage products, and data analysis were carried out as described. White, S., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. describe the pairing rules for recognition in the minor groove of DNA by pyrrole-imidazole polyamides. *Chemistry &*
30 *Biology* 4, 569-578 (1997).

Figure 11 shows the synthesis of a bifunctional polyamide which incorporates the Hp/Py pair. Treatment of a sample of ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Pam-resin (see Figure 6) with 3,3'-diamino-*N*-methyldipropylamine, 55°C, 18 h followed by reverse phase HPLC purification
35 provides the Op polyamide with a free primary amine group which can be coupled to an activated carboxylic acid derivative. Treatment with (i) EDTA-dianhydride, DMSO/NMP, DIEA, 55 °C; (ii) 0.1M NaOH, followed by reverse phase HPLC purification provides the Op-Py-Im-polyamide-EDTA conjugate. Treatment of the 3-methoxypyrrole polyamide with

thiophenol, NaH, DMF, at 100 °C for 120 min provides polyamide 2 after reverse phase HPLC purification.

Figure 12 shows the determination of the binding orientation of hairpin polyamides ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA•Fe(II) 2-E•Fe(II) and ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA•Fe(II) 3-E•Fe(II) by affinity cleaving footprint titration. Top and bottom left: Affinity cleavage experiments on a 3' ³²P labeled 250-bp pJK6 *Eco*RI/ *Pvu* II restriction fragment. The 5'-TGGACA-3' and 5'-TGGTCA-3' sites are shown on the right side of the autoradiogram. Top left: lane 1, adenine-specific chemical sequencing reaction; lanes 2-6, 6.5 μ M, 1.0 μ M, 100 nM, 10 nM, 1 nM polyamide 2-E•Fe(II); lane 7, intact restriction fragment, no polyamide added. Bottom left: lane 1, A reaction; lanes 2-6, 8.5 μ M, 1.0 μ M, 100 nM, 10 nM, 1 nM polyamide 3-E•Fe(II); lane 7, intact DNA. All reactions were carried out in a total volume of 40 μ L. A stock solution of polyamide or H₂O was added to a solution containing 20 kcpm labeled restriction fragment, affording final solution conditions of 25 mM Tris-Acetate, 20 mM NaCl, 100 μ M/ bp calf thymus DNA, at pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for a minimum of 4 h at 22°K before initiation of reactions. Affinity cleavage reactions were carried out as described White, S., Baird, E.E. & Dervan, P.B. Effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* 35, 6147-6152 (1996). Top and bottom right: Affinity cleavage patterns of 2-E•Fe(II) and 3-E•Fe(II) at 100 nM bound to 5'-TGGACA-3' and 5'-TGGTCA-3'. Bar heights are proportional to the relative cleavage intensities at each base pair. Shaded and nonshaded circles denote imidazole and pyrrole carboxamides, respectively. Nonshaded diamonds represent the β -alanine moiety. A curved line represents the γ -aminobutyric acid, and the + represents the positively charged dimethylaminopropylamide tail group. The boxed Fe denotes the EDTA•Fe(II) cleavage moiety.

Figure 13 shows quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments with the polyamides ImPyPyPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPyPy- β -Dp and ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp on the 3' ³²P labeled 252-bp pJK7 *Eco*RI/ *Pvu* II restriction fragment. For ImPyPyPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPyPy- β -Dp gel (left): lane 1, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lanes 2-18, DNase I digestion products in the presence of 1.0 μ M, 500 nM, 200, 100, 65, 40, 25, 15, 10, 6.5, 4.0, 2.5, 1.5, 1.0, 0.5, 0.2, 0.1 nM polyamide; lane 19, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lane 20, intact restriction fragment; lane 21, guanine-specific chemical sequencing reaction; lane 22, adenine-specific chemical sequencing reaction. For ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp gel (right): lane 1, intact DNA; lane 2, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lanes 3-19, 1.0 μ M, 500 nM, 200, 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 2, 1, 0.5, 0.2, 0.1, 0.05, 0.01, 0.005, 0.001 nM polyamide; lane 20, DNase I digestion products in the absence of polyamide; lane 21, A reaction. All reactions were done in a total volume of 400

μL. A polyamide stock solution or H₂O was added to an assay buffer containing radiolabeled restriction fragment, with the final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0. Solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 4-12 h at 22°C before initiation of footprinting reactions. Footprinting reactions, separation of cleavage products, and data analysis were carried as described. White, S., Baird, E.E. & Dervan, P.B. Effects of the A•T/T•A degeneracy of pyrrole-imidazole polyamide recognition in the minor groove of DNA. *Biochemistry* **35**, 6147-6152 (1996).

Fig. 14 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the -NH-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CONH- hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGTNNW-3', where the 5'-GTNN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d (W = A or T, N = A, G, C, or T). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGTNNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Fig. 15 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the -NH-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CONH- hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGANNW-3', where the 5'-GANN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d (W = A or T, N = A, G, C, or T). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGANNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Fig. 16 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CONH}-$ hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGGNNW-3', where the 5'-GGNN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d ($W = \text{A or T}$, $N = \text{A, G, C, or T}$). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGGNNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Fig. 17 shows the 8-ring Hp-Py-Im-polyamide hairpins described by the pairing code of the present invention. The eight ring hairpin template is shown at the top. A polyamide having the formula $X_1X_2X_3X_4-\gamma-X_5X_6X_7X_8$ wherein γ is the $-\text{NH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CONH}-$ hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X_4/X_5 , X_3/X_6 , X_2/X_7 , and X_1/X_8 represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs. The minor groove sequence to be bound is represented as 5'-WGCNNW-3', where the 5'-GCNN-3' core sequence is defined as position a, b, c, and d ($W = \text{A or T}$, $N = \text{A, G, C, or T}$). A linear sequence of aromatic amino acids fills the hairpin template in order to satisfy the ring pairing requirements to correspond to the DNA base pairs in the minor groove to be bound. The ring pairing code as applied is listed in Table 2. The 16 unique hairpin polyamides which target 16 5'-WGCNNW-3' sequences are drawn as binding models where filled and unfilled circles represent imidazole and pyrrole rings respectively; circles containing an H represent 3-hydroxypyrrole, and the curved line connecting the polyamide subunits represents γ -aminobutyric acid.

Four-ring polyamide subunits, covalently coupled to form eight-ring hairpin structures, bind specifically to 6-bp target sequences at subnanomolar concentrations. Trauger, J.W., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P.B. describe the recognition of DNA by designed ligands at subnanomolar concentrations. *Nature* **382**, 559-561 (1996); Swalley, S. E., Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describe the discrimination of 5'-GGGG-3', 5'-GCGC-3', and 5'-GGCC-3' sequences in the minor groove of DNA by eight-ring hairpin polyamides. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **119**, 6953-6961 (1997). The DNA-binding affinities of three eight-ring hairpin polyamides shown in Figure 1 as compound 1, 2, and 3 containing pairings of Im/Py, Py/Im opposite G•C,

C•G and either Py/Py, Hp/Py, or Py/Py at a common single point opposite T•A and A•T has been determined. Equilibrium dissociation constants (K_d) for ImImPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp 1, ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp 2, ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp 3 of Figure 1 are shown in Table 1. Brenowitz, M., Senear, D. F., Shea, M. A. & Ackers, G. K. describe a quantitative DNase footprint titration method for studying protein-DNA interactions. *Methods Enzymol.* **130**, 132-181 (1986); The K_d values were determined by quantitative DNase I footprint titration experiments: on a 3' 32 P-labeled 250-bp DNA fragment containing the target sites, 5'-TGGACA-3' and 5'-TGGTCA-3' which differ by a single A•T base pair in the fourth position. The DNase footprint gels are shown in Figure 3.

TABLE 1 Equilibrium dissociation constants*

Polyamide†	5'-TGGTCA-3'	5'-TGGACA-3'	K_{rel}^\ddagger
1 Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.077$ nM	 $K_d = 0.15$ nM	2.0
2 Py/Py	 $K_d = 15$ nM	 $K_d = 0.83$ nM	0.06
3 Hp/Py	 $K_d = 0.48$ nM	 $K_d = 37$ nM	77

*The reported dissociation constants are the average values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. The standard deviation for each data set is less than 15% of the reported number. Assays were carried out in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂ at pH 7.0 and 22 °C.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the fourth position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'-TGGACA-3')/K_d(5'-TGGTCA-3')$.

Based on the pairing rules for polyamide-DNA complexes both of these sequences are a match for control polyamide 1 which places a Py/Py pairing opposite

A•T and T•A at both sites. It was determined that in polyamide 1 (Py/Py) binds to 5'-TGGTCA-3' and 5'-TGGACA-3' within a factor of 2 ($K_d = 0.077$ or 0.15 nM respectively). In contrast, polyamide 2 (Py/Py) binds to 5'-TGGTCA-3' and 5'-TGGACA-3' with dissociation constants which differ by a factor of 18 ($K_d = 15$ nM and 0.83 nM respectively). By reversing the pairing in polyamide 3 (Hp/Py) the dissociation constants differ again in the opposite direction by a factor of 77 ($K_D = 0.48$ nM and 37 nM respectively). Control experiments performed on separate DNA fragments; reveal that neither a 5'-TGGGCA-3' or a 5'-TGGCCA-3' site is bound by polyamide 2 or 3 at concentrations ≤ 100 nM, indicating that the Hp/Py and Py/Py ring pairings do not bind opposite G•C or C•G. The A•T vs. T•A discrimination is achieved preferably when the two neighboring base pairs are G•C and C•G (GTC vs. GAC).

The specificity of polyamides **2** and **3** for sites which differ by a single A•T/T•A base pair results from small chemical changes. Replacing the Py/Py pair in **1** with a Py/Hp pairing as in **2**, a single substitution of C3-OH for C3-H, destabilizes interaction with 5'-TGGTCA-3' by 191-fold, a free energy difference of 3.1 kcal mol⁻¹. Interaction of **2** with 5'-TGGACA-3' is destabilized only 6-fold relative to **1**, a free energy difference of 1.1 kcal mol⁻¹. Similarly, replacing the Py/Py pair in **1** with Hp/Py as in **3** destabilizes interaction with 5'-TGGACA-3' by 252-fold, a free energy difference of 3.2 kcal mol⁻¹. Interaction of **3** with 5'-TGGTCA-3' is destabilized only 6-fold relative to **1**, a free energy difference of 1.0 kcal mol⁻¹.

The polyamides of this invention provide for coded targeting of predetermined DNA sequences with affinity and specificity comparable to sequence-specific DNA binding proteins. Hp, Im, and Py polyamides complete the minor groove recognition code using three aromatic amino acids which combine to form four ring pairings (Im/Py, Py/Im, Hp/Py, and Py/Hp) which complement the four Watson-Crick base pairs, as shown in TABLE 2. There are a possible 240 four base pair sequences which contain at least 1 A•T or T•A base pair and therefore can advantageously use an Hp/Py, or Py/Hp carboxamide binding. Polyamides binding to any of these sequences can be designed in accordance with the code of TABLE 2.

TABLE 2 Pairing code for minor groove recognition*

Pair	G•C	C•G	T•A	A•T
Im/Py	+	-	-	-
Py/Im	-	+	-	-
Hp/Py	-	-	+	-
Py/Hp	-	-	-	+

* favored (+), disfavored (-)

For certain G•C rich sequences the affinity of polyamide•DNA complexes may be enhanced by substitution of an Im/β pair for Im/Py at G•C and β/Im for Py/Im at C•G. At A•T and T•A base pairs, either a Py/β, β/Py, and β/β may be used. The alternate aliphatic/aromatic amino acid pairing code is described in Table 3.

5

TABLE 3 Aliphatic / Aromatic substitution for ring pairings*

Pair	Substitution
Im/Py	Im/β
Py/Im	β/Im
Hp/Py	Py/β, β/Py, Hp/β, β/β
Py/Hp	Py/β, β/Py, β/Hp, β/β

U. S. Patent 5,578,444 describes numerous promoter region targeting sequences from which base pair sequences for targeting a polyamide can be identified.

10

PCT U.S. 97/003332 describes methods for synthesis of polyamides which are suitable for preparing polyamides of this invention. The use of β-alanine in place of a pyrrole amino acid in the synthetic methods provides aromatic/aliphatic pairing (Im/β, β/Im, Py/β, and β/Py) and aliphatic/aliphatic pairing (β/β) substitution. The use of γ-aminobutyric acid, or a substituted γ-aminobutyric acid such as (R)-2,4 diaminobutyric acid, provides for preferred hairpin turns. The following examples illustrate the synthesis of polyamides of the present invention.

15

Example 1:
PREPARATION OF A PROTECTED Hp MONOMER FOR SOLID PHASE
SYNTHESIS.

Distamycin and its analogs have previously been considered targets of traditional
5 multistep synthetic chemistry. Arcamone, F., Orezzi, P. G., Barbieri, W., Nicoletta, V. & Penco,
S. describe a solution phase synthesis of distamycin *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **1967**, 97, 1097. The
repeating amide of distamycin is formed from an aromatic carboxylic acid and an aromatic
amine. The aromatic acid is often unstable to decarboxylation, and the aromatic amines have
10 been found to be air and light sensitive. Lown, J. W. & Krowicki, K. describe a solution phase
synthesis of Distamycin *J. Org. Chem.* **1985**, 50, 3774. The variable coupling yields, long
reaction times (often >24 h), numerous side products, and reactive intermediates (acid chlorides
and trichloro ketones) characteristic of the traditional solution phase coupling reactions make
the synthesis of the aromatic carboxamides problematic. B. Merrifield describes the solid phase
15 synthesis of a tetrapeptide *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1963**, 85, 2149. In order to implement an efficient
solid phase methodology for the synthesis of the pyrrole- imidazole polyamides, the following
components were developed: (1) a synthesis which provides large quantities of appropriately
protected monomer or dimer building blocks in high purity, (2) optimized protocols for forming
an amide in high yield from a support-bound aromatic amine and an aromatic carboxylic acid,
20 (3) methods for monitoring reactions on the solid support, and (4) a stable resin linkage agent
that can be cleaved in high yield upon completion of the synthesis. Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B.
describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino
acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. In order to
prepare polyamides which contain the 3-hydroxypyrrole monomer, a synthesis has been
25 developed which allows the appropriately protected Boc-Op acid monomer to be prepared on 50
g scale. ¹H NMR and ¹³C NMR spectra were recorded on a General Electric-QE 300 NMR
spectrometer in CD₃OD or DMSO-*d*₆, with chemical shifts reported in parts per million relative
to residual CHD₂OD or DMSO-*d*₅, respectively. IR spectra were recorded on a Perkin-Elmer
FTIR spectrometer. High-resolution mass spectra were recorded using fast atom bombardment
(FABMS) techniques at the Mass Spectrometry Laboratory at the University of California,
30 Riverside. Reactions were executed under an inert argon atmosphere. Reagent grade chemicals
were used as received unless otherwise noted. Still, W. C., Kahn, M. & Mitra, A. describe flash
column chromatography *J. Org. Chem.* **1978**, 40, 2923-2925. Flash chromatography was
carried out using EM science Kieselgel 60 (230-400) mesh. Thin-layer chromatography was
performed on EM Reagents silica gel plates (0.5 mm thickness). All compounds were
35 visualized with short-wave ultraviolet light.

Table 4 :Intermediates for preparation of Boc-protected 3-methoxypyrrole

NAME	STRUCTURE
Ethyl 4-carboxy-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate.	
Ethyl 4-[(Benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate	
Ethyl 4-[(Benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate	
Ethyl 4-[(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate	
4-[(tert-Butyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylic acid	

Ethyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate Ethyl-4-carboxy-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate (60 g, 281.7 mmol) was dissolved in 282 mL acetonitrile. TEA (28.53 g, 282 mmol) was added, followed by diphenylphosphorylazide (77.61 g, 282 mmol). The mixture was refluxed for 5 hours, followed by addition of benzyl alcohol (270 ml) and reflux continued overnight. The solution was cooled and volatiles removed *in vacuo*. The residue was absorbed onto silica and chromatographed, 4:1 hexanes : ethyl acetate, to give a white solid (21.58 g, 24%) ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.73 (s, 1H), 8.31 (s, 1H), 7.31 (m, 5H), 6.96 (s, 1H), 5.08 (s, 2H), 4.21 (q, 2H, J = 7.1 Hz), 3.66 (s, 3H), 1.25 (t, 3H, J = 7.1 Hz); MS *m/e* 319.163 (M+H 319.122 calcd. for C₁₆H₁₈N₂O₅).

Ethyl 4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate. Ethyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate (13.4 g, 42.3 mmol) was dissolved in 110 mL acetone. Anhydrous K₂CO₃ (11.67 g, 84.5 mmol) was added,

followed by methyl iodide (5.96 g, 42.3 mmol) and dimethylaminopyridine (0.5 g, 4.23 mmol) and the mixture stirred overnight. The solid K_2CO_3 was removed by filtration and 200 ml water added. Volatiles were removed *in vacuo* and the solution made acidic with addition of 1N H_2SO_4 . The aqueous layer was extracted with diethyl ether. Organic layers were combined, washed with 10% H_2SO_4 , dried over $MgSO_4$, and dried to give a white solid. The solid was used without further purification and dissolved in 38 ml DMF. DIEA (11 ml), Boc anhydride (9.23 g, 42.3 mmol), and 10 % Pd/C (500 mg) were added and the solution stirred under hydrogen (1 atm) for 2.1 h. The slurry was filtered through celite which was washed with methanol. Water 250 ml was added and volatiles removed *in vacuo*. The aqueous layer was extracted with ether. Organic layers were combined, washed with water and brine, and dried over $MgSO_4$. Solvent was removed *in vacuo* to give a white solid (8.94 g, 71%) 1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 8.43 (s, 1H), 7.03 (s, 1H), 4.19 (q, 2H, $J = 7.1$ Hz), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.67 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.26 (t, 3H, $J = 7.1$); MS m/e 299.161 (M+H 299.153 calcd. for $C_{14}H_{22}N_2O_5$).

Ethyl 4-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-hydroxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate Ethyl 4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methoxy-1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylate (9.0 g, 30.2 mmol) was dissolved in 30 mL ethanol. NaOH (30 ml, 1 M, aq) was added and the solution stirred for 4 days. Water (200 ml) was added and ethanol removed *in vacuo*. The solution was extracted with diethyl ether, aqueous layer acidified to pH = 2-3, and extracted again with diethyl ether. Organic layers were dried over $MgSO_4$, and solvent removed *in vacuo* to give a white solid (6.0 g, 20.5 mmol, 87% based on recovered SM) 1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) δ 12.14 (s, 1H), 8.37 (s, 1H), 6.98 (s, 1H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 3.66 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 9H); MS m/e 293.112 (M+H 293.104 calcd. for $C_{12}H_{18}N_2O_5$).

EXAMPLE 2:

SOLID PHASE SYNTHESIS OF 3-HYDROXYPYRROLE POLYAMIDES.

Cycling protocols were optimized to afford high stepwise coupling yields (>99%). Deprotection by aminolysis affords up to 100 mg quantities of polyamide. Solid phase polyamide synthesis protocols were modified from the *in situ* neutralization Boc-chemistry protocols. Schnolzer, M., Alewood, P., Jones, A., Alewood, D., Kent, S.B.H. report rapid *in situ* neutralization for solid phase peptide synthesis *Int. J. Peptide. Protein. Res.* **1992**, *40*, 180. Coupling cycles are rapid, 72 min per residue for manual synthesis or 180 min per residue for machine-assisted synthesis, and require no special precautions beyond those used for ordinary solid phase peptide synthesis. Manual solid phase synthesis of a pyrrole-imidazole polyamide consists of a dichloromethane (DCM) wash, removal of the Boc group with trifluoroacetic acid (TFA)/DCM/thiophenol (PhSH), a DCM wash, a DMF wash, taking a resin sample for analysis, addition of activated monomer, addition of DIEA if necessary, coupling for 45 min, taking a

resin sample for analysis, and a final DMF wash (Figure 5, Table I). In addition, the manual solid phase protocol for synthesis of pyrrole-imidazole polyamides has been adapted for use on a ABI 430A peptide synthesizer. The aromatic amine of the pyrrole and imidazole do not react in the quantitative ninhydrin test. Stepwise cleavage of a sample of resin and analysis by HPLC indicates that high stepwise yields (> 99%) are routinely achieved.

Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), Hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt), 2-(1H-Benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium hexa-fluorophosphate (HBTU) and 0.2 mmol/gram Boc- β -alanine-(-4-carboxamidomethyl)-benzyl-ester-copoly(styrene-divinylbenzene) resin (Boc- β -Pam-Resin) was purchased from Peptides International (0.2 mmol/gram), NovaBiochem (0.6 mmol/gram), or Peninsula (0.6 mmol/gram). ((*R*)-2-Fmoc-4-Boc-diaminobutyric acid, (*S*)-2-Fmoc-4-Boc-diaminobutyric acid, and (*R*)-2-amino-4-Boc-diaminobutyric acid were purchased from Bachem. *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (DIEA), *N,N*-dimethylformamide (DMF), *N*-methylpyrrolidone (NMP), DMSO/NMP, Acetic anhydride (Ac_2O), and 0.0002 M potassium cyanide/pyridine were purchased from Applied Biosystems. Dichloromethane (DCM) and triethylamine (TEA) were reagent grade from EM, thiophenol (PhSH), dimethylaminopropylamine (Dp), Sodium Hydride, (*R*)- α -methoxy- α -(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetic acid ((*R*)MPTA) and (*S*)- α -methoxy- α -(trifluoromethyl)phenylacetic acid ((*S*)MPTA) were from Aldrich, trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) Biograde from Halocarbon, phenol from Fisher, and ninhydrin from Pierce. All reagents were used without further purification.

Quik-Sep polypropylene disposable filters were purchased from Isolab Inc. ^1H NMR spectra were recorded on a General Electric-QE NMR spectrometer at 300 MHz with chemical shifts reported in parts per million relative to residual solvent. UV spectra were measured in water on a Hewlett-Packard Model 8452A diode array spectrophotometer. Optical rotations were recorded on a JASCO Dip 1000 Digital Polarimeter. Matrix-assisted, laser desorption/ionization time of flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF) was performed at the Protein and Peptide Microanalytical Facility at the California Institute of Technology. HPLC analysis was performed on either a HP 1090M analytical HPLC or a Beckman Gold system using a RAINEN C_{18} , Microsorb MV, 5 μm , 300 x 4.6 mm reversed phase column in 0.1% (wt/v) TFA with acetonitrile as eluent and a flow rate of 1.0 mL/min, gradient elution 1.25% acetonitrile/min. Preparatory reverse phase HPLC was performed on a Beckman HPLC with a Waters DeltaPak 25 x 100 mm, 100 μm C_{18} column equipped with a guard, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA, 0.25% acetonitrile/min. 18M Ω water was obtained from a Millipore MilliQ water purification system, and all buffers were 0.2 μm filtered.

Activation of Boc-3-methoxypyrrole acid. The amino acid (0.5 mmol) was dissolved in 2 mL DMF. HBTU (190 mg, 0.5 mmol) was added followed by DIEA (1 mL) and the resulting mixture was shaken for 5 min.

5 **Activation of Imidazole-2-carboxylic acid, γ -aminobutyric acid, Boc-glycine, and Boc- β -alanine.** The appropriate amino acid or acid (2 mmol) was dissolved in 2 mL DMF. HBTU (720 mg, 1.9 mmol) was added followed by DIEA (1 mL) and the solution shaken for at least 5 min.

10 **Activation of Boc-Imidazole acid.** Boc imidazole acid (257 mg, 1 mmol) and HOBt (135 mg, 1 mmol) were dissolved in 2 mL DMF, DCC (202 mg, 1 mmol) is then added and the solution allowed to stand for at least 5 min.

15 **Acetylation Mix.** 2 mL DMF, DIEA (710 μ L, 4.0 mmol), and acetic anhydride (380 μ L, 4.0 mmol) were combined immediately before use.

20 **Manual Synthesis Protocol.** Boc- β -alanine-Pam-Resin (1.25 g, 0.25 mmol) is placed in a 20 mL glass reaction vessel, shaken in DMF for 5 min and the reaction vessel drained. The resin was washed with DCM (2 x 30 s.) and the Boc group removed with 80% TFA/DCM/0.5M PhSH, 1 x 30s., 1 x 20 min The resin was washed with DCM (2 x 30 s.) followed by DMF (1 x 30 s.) A resin sample (5 - 10 mg) was taken for analysis. The vessel was drained completely and activated monomer added, followed by DIEA if necessary. The reaction vessel was shaken vigorously to make a slurry. The coupling was allowed to proceed for 90 min, and a resin sample taken. Acetic anhydride (1 mL) was added and the reaction shaken for 5 min. The
25 reaction vessel was then washed with DMF, followed by DCM.

30 **Machine-Assisted Protocols.** Machine-assisted synthesis was performed on a ABI 430A synthesizer on a 0.18 mmol scale (900 mg resin; 0.2 mmol/gram). Each cycle of amino acid addition involved: deprotection with approximately 80% TFA/DCM/0.4M PhSH for 3 minutes, draining the reaction vessel, and then deprotection for 17 minutes; 2 dichloromethane flow washes; an NMP flow wash; draining the reaction vessel; coupling for 1 hour with *in situ* neutralization, addition of dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO)/NMP, coupling for 30 minutes, addition of DIEA, coupling for 30 minutes; draining the reaction vessel; washing with DCM, taking a resin sample for evaluation of the progress of the synthesis by HPLC analysis; capping with
35 acetic anhydride/DIEA in DCM for 6 minutes; and washing with DCM. A double couple cycle is employed when coupling aliphatic amino acids to imidazole, all other couplings are performed with single couple cycles.

The ABI 430A synthesizer was left in the standard hardware configuration for NMP-HOBt protocols. Reagent positions 1 and 7 were DIEA, reagent position 2 was TFA/0.5M thiophenol, reagent position 3 was 70% ethanolamine/methanol, reagent position 4 was acetic anhydride, reagent position 5 was DMSO/NMP, reagent position 6 was methanol, and reagent position 8 was DMF. New activator functions were written, one for direct transfer of the cartridge contents to the concentrator (switch list 21, 25, 26, 35, 37, 44), and a second for transfer of reagent position 8 directly to the cartridge (switch list 37, 39, 45, 46).

Boc-Py-OBt ester (357 mg, 1 mmol) was dissolved in 2 ml DMF and filtered into a synthesis cartridge. Boc-Im acid monomer was activated (DCC/HOBt), filtered, and placed in a synthesis cartridge. Imidazole-2-carboxylic acid was added manually. At the initiation of the coupling cycle the synthesis was interrupted, the reaction vessel vented and the activated monomer added directly to the reaction vessel through the resin sampling loop via syringe. When manual addition was necessary an empty synthesis cartridge was used. Aliphatic amino acids (2 mmol) and HBTU (1.9 mmol) were placed in a synthesis cartridge. 3 ml of DMF was added using a calibrated delivery loop from reagent bottle 8, followed by calibrated delivery of 1 ml DIEA from reagent bottle 7, and a 3 minute mixing of the cartridge.

The activator cycle was written to transfer activated monomer directly from the cartridge to the concentrator vessel, bypassing the activator vessel. After transfer, 1 ml of DIEA was measured into the cartridge using a calibrated delivery loop, and the DIEA solution combined with the activated monomer solution in the concentrator vessel. The activated ester in 2:1 DMF/DIEA was then transferred to the reaction vessel. All lines were emptied with argon before and after solution transfers.

ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp. *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc-β-Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat dimethylaminopropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (97 mg, 49% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆)

δ 10.24 (s, 1 H), 10.14 (s, 1 H), 9.99 (s, 1 H), 9.94 (s, 1 H), 9.88 (s, 1 H), 9.4 (br s, 1 H), 9.25 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 1 H), 8.05 (m, 3 H), 7.60 (s, 1 H), 7.46 (s, 1 H), 7.41 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (d, 1), 7.21 (d, 1 H), 7.19 (d, 1 H), 7.13 (m, 2 H), 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.02 (d, 1 H), 6.83 (m, 2 H), 3.96 (s, 6 H), 3.90 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (m, 6 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.75 (d, 9 H), 3.33 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.15 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 3.08 (q, 2 H, $J = 6.0$ Hz), 2.96 (quintet, 2 H, $J = 5.6$ Hz), 2.70 (d, 6 H, $J = 4.5$ Hz), 2.32 (m, 4 H), 1.71 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1253.5 (1253.6 calc. for $C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$).

ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp* (5 mg, 3.9 μ mol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μ L) and thiophenol (500 μ L) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was slowly added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp* (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μ L) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp* is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (3.8 mg, 77 % recovery). UV (H_2O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); 1H NMR ($DMSO-d_6$) δ 10.34 (s, 1 H), 10.24 (s, 1 H), 10.00 (s, 2 H), 9.93 (s, 1 H), 9.87 (s, 1 H), 9.83 (s, 1 H), 9.4 (br s, 1 H), 9.04 (s, 1 H), 8.03 (m, 3 H), 7.58 (s, 1 H), 7.44 (s, 1 H), 7.42 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (s, 1 H), 7.20 (m, 3 H), 7.12 (m, 2 H), 7.05 (d, 1 H), 7.02 (d, 1 H), 6.83 (s, 1 H), 6.79 (s, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 6 H), 3.90 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 3.79 (s, 3 H), 3.75 (d, 6 H), 3.33 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.14 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.08 (q, 2 H, $J = 6.1$ Hz), 2.99 (quintet, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 2.69 (d, 6 H, $J = 4.2$ Hz), 2.31 (m, 4 H), 1.72 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1239.6 (1239.6 calc. for $C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{11}$).

ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp. *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc- β -Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g) as described for *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp*. A sample of *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat dimethylaminopropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (101 mg, 50% recovery). UV (H_2O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1253.6 (1253.6 calc. for $C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$).

ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy. A sample of *ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp* (5 mg, 3.9 μmol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide and purified by reversed phase HPLC as described for *ImImHpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp*. *ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (3.2 mg, 66 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1239.6 (1239.6 calc. for C₅₇H₇₁N₂₂O₁₁).

ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp. *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc-β-Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.45 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat dimethylaminopropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (45 mg, 25% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 310 (50,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.45 (s, 1 H), 9.90 (s, 1 H), 9.82 (s, 1 H), 9.5 (br s, 1 H), 9.38 (s, 1 H), 9.04 (s, 1 H), 8.02 (m, 3 H), 7.37 (s, 1 H), 7.25 (m, 2 H), 7.15 (d, 1 H, *J* = 1.6 Hz), 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.09 (d, 1 H), 7.03 (d, 1 H), 6.99 (d, 1 H), 6.87 (d, 1 H), 6.84 (d, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 3.77 (s, 6 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.74 (s, 1 H), 3.34 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.6 Hz), 3.20 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.8 Hz), 3.09 (q, 2 H, *J* = 6.1 Hz), 2.97 (quintet, 2 H, *J* = 5.3 Hz), 2.70 (d, 6 H, *J* = 3.9 Hz), 2.34 (m, 4 H), 1.73 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1007.6 (1007.5 calc. for C₄₈H₆₃N₁₆O₉).

ImPyPy-γ-HpPyPy. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of *ImPyPy-γ-OpPyPy-β-Dp* (5 mg, 4.8 μmol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μL) and thiophenol (500 μL) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was slowly added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, *ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp* (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μL) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImHpPy-γ-ImHpPyPy-β-Dp* is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (2.5 mg, 52 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 310 (50,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.44 (s, 1 H), 10.16 (s, 1 H), 9.90 (s, 1 H), 9.77 (s, 1 H), 9.5 (br s, 1 H), 9.00 (s,

1 H), 8.03 (m, 3 H), 7.37 (s, 1 H), 7.26 (m, 2 H), 7.14 (d, 1 H, $J = 1.7$ Hz), 7.12 (m, 2 H), 7.02 (d, 1 H), 6.93 (d, 1 H), 6.88 (d, 1 H), 6.82 (d, 1 H), 6.72 (d, 1 H), 3.96 (s, 3 H), 3.81 (s, 6 H), 3.77 (s, 3 H), 3.76 (s, 3 H), 3.74 (s, 1 H), 3.36 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.4$ Hz), 3.22 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.9$ Hz), 3.09 (q, 2 H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 2.98 (quintet, 2 H, $J = 5.3$ Hz), 2.70 (d, 6 H, $J = 4.3$ Hz), 2.34 (m, 4 H), 1.78 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 994.2 (993.5 calc. for $C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$).

Table 5. Mass spectral characterization of Op and Hp polyamides, synthesized and purified as described for ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp and ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp.

	POLYAMIDE	FORMULA	(M+H)CALCD	FOUND
10	ImOpPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.5
	ImHpPy- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.2
	ImPyOp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.5
	ImPyHp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.4
	ImPyPy- γ -OpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.6
15	ImPyPy- γ -HpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.2
	ImPyPy- γ -PyOpPy- β -Dp	$C_{48}H_{63}N_{16}O_9$	1007.5	1007.5
	ImPyPy- γ -PyHpPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_9$	993.5	993.4
	ImOpOp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{49}H_{65}N_{16}O_{10}$	1037.5	1037.5
	ImHpHp- γ -PyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{47}H_{61}N_{16}O_{10}$	1009.5	1009.4
20	ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$	1253.6	1253.5
	ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{11}$	1239.6	1239.6
	ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$	1253.6	1253.6
	ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{11}$	1239.6	1239.6
	ImOpPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{60}H_{76}N_{21}O_{12}$	1282.6	1282.6
25	ImHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{21}O_{12}$	1254.6	1254.6
	ImImOpPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{59}H_{75}N_{22}O_{12}$	1283.6	1283.6
	ImImHpPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{57}H_{71}N_{22}O_{12}$	1255.6	1255.5
	ImOpPyPy- γ -PyPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{60}H_{75}N_{20}O_{11}$	1251.6	1251.5
	ImPyPyPy- γ -PyPyOpPy- β -Dp	$C_{60}H_{75}N_{20}O_{11}$	1251.6	1251.5
30	ImImPyPy- γ -ImPyOpPy- β -Dp	$C_{58}H_{72}N_{22}O_{11}$	1253.6	1253.7
	ImOpPyPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{72}H_{88}N_{25}O_{14}$	1526.7	1526.6
	ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{70}H_{84}N_{25}O_{14}$	1498.7	1498.0
	ImImPyPyPy- γ -ImOpOpPyPy- β -Dp	$C_{71}H_{87}N_{26}O_{14}$	1527.7	1527.7

EXAMPLE 3:
DETERMINATION OF POLYAMIDE
BINDING AFFINITY AND SEQUENCE SPECIFICITY.

Representative footprint titration experiments are shown in Figures 3 and 10. A 252-bp DNA fragment which is typically used for the footprint titration experiments provides 247 possible 6-bp binding sites for an eight-ring hairpin polyamide. Thus, in addition to providing DNA binding affinities, the footprint titration experiments also reveal DNA binding sequence-specificity. The DNA binding sequence specificity of polyamides which differ by a single Py/Py, Hp/Py, or Py/Hp pair for sites which differ by a single A•T or T•A base pair are described in Tables 1, 6, and 7.

Quantitative DNase I Footprint Titrations All reactions were executed in a total volume of 400 μ L (Brenowitz, M. *et al.*, 1986). A polyamide stock solution or H₂O (for reference lanes) was added to an assay buffer containing 3'-³²P radiolabeled restriction fragment (20,000 cpm), affording final solution conditions of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, 5 mM CaCl₂, pH 7.0, and either (i) a suitable concentration range of polyamide, or (ii) no polyamide (for reference lanes). The solutions were allowed to equilibrate for 24 hours at 22°C. Footprinting reactions were initiated by the addition of 10 μ L of a stock solution of DNase I (at the appropriate concentration to give ~55% intact DNA) containing 1 mM dithiothreitol and allowed to proceed for 7 minutes at 22°C. The reactions were stopped by the addition of 50 μ L of a solution containing 2.25 M NaCl, 150 mM EDTA, 23 μ M base pair calf thymus DNA, and 0.6 mg/ml glycogen, and ethanol precipitated. The reactions were resuspended in 1 \times TBE/80% formamide loading buffer, denatured by heating at 85°C for 15 minutes, and placed on ice. The reaction products were separated by electrophoresis on an 8% polyacrylamide gel (5% crosslinking, 7 M urea) in 1 \times TBE at 2000 V for 1.5 h. Gels were dried on a slab dryer and then exposed to a storage phosphor screen at 22°C.

Photostimuable storage phosphor imaging plates (Kodak Storage Phosphor Screen SO230 obtained from Molecular Dynamics) were pressed flat against dried gel samples and exposed in the dark at 22°C for 12-24 hours. A Molecular Dynamics 400S PhosphorImager was used to obtain all data from the storage screens (Johnston *et al.*, 1990). The data were analyzed by performing volume integration of the target site and reference blocks using the ImageQuant v. 3.3 software running on a Compaq Pentium 80.

Quantitative DNase I Footprint Titration Data Analysis was performed by taking a background-corrected volume integration of rectangles encompassing the footprint sites and a reference site at which DNase I reactivity was invariant across the titration generated values for

the site intensities (I_{site}) and the reference intensity (I_{ref}). The apparent fractional occupancy (θ_{app}) of the sites were calculated using the equation:

$$\theta_{\text{app}} = 1 - \frac{I_{\text{site}}/I_{\text{ref}}}{I_{\text{site}}^{\circ}/I_{\text{ref}}^{\circ}} \quad (1)$$

where I_{site}° and I_{ref}° are the site and reference intensities, respectively, from a DNase I control lane to which no polyamide was added.

The ($[L]_{\text{tot}}$, θ_{app}) data were fit to a Langmuir binding isotherm (eq. 2, $n=1$) by minimizing the difference between θ_{app} and θ_{fit} , using the modified Hill equation:

$$\theta_{\text{fit}} = \theta_{\text{min}} + (\theta_{\text{max}} - \theta_{\text{min}}) \frac{K_a^n [L]_{\text{tot}}^n}{1 + K_a^n [L]_{\text{tot}}^n} \quad (2)$$

where $[L]_{\text{tot}}$ is the total polyamide concentration, K_a is the equilibrium association constant, and θ_{min} and θ_{max} are the experimentally determined site saturation values when the site is unoccupied or saturated, respectively. The data were fit using a nonlinear least-squares fitting procedure of KaleidaGraph software (v. 3.0.1, Abelbeck Software) with K_a , θ_{max} , and θ_{min} as the adjustable parameters. The goodness of fit of the binding curve to the data points is evaluated by the correlation coefficient, with $R > 0.97$ as the criterion for an acceptable fit. Four sets of acceptable data were used in determining each association constant. All lanes from a gel were used unless a visual inspection revealed a data point to be obviously flawed relative to neighboring points. The data were normalized using the following equation:

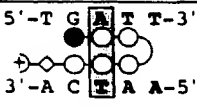
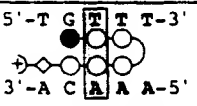
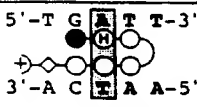
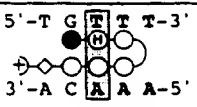
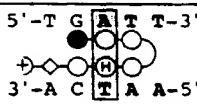
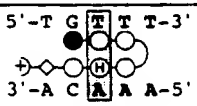
$$\theta_{\text{norm}} = \frac{\theta_{\text{app}} - \theta_{\text{min}}}{\theta_{\text{max}} - \theta_{\text{min}}} \quad (3)$$

TABLE 6 Discrimination of 5'-TGTA-3' and 5'-TGTTA-3'			
Pair†	5'-TGTA-3'	5'-TGTTA-3'	$K_{\text{rel}}^{\ddagger}$
Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.014 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.007 \mu\text{M}$	2.0
Py/Hp	 $K_d = 0.20 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.56 \mu\text{M}$	0.36
Hp/Py	 $K_d = 4.0 \mu\text{M}$	 $K_d = 0.28 \mu\text{M}$	14

*The reported equilibrium dissociation constants are the mean values obtained from two DNase I footprint titration experiments on a 3' ^{32}P labeled 370-bp pDEH1 EcoRI/PvuII DNA restriction fragment¹³. The assays were carried out at 22 °C, pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂ and 5 mM CaCl₂.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the third position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'\text{-TGTA-3}')/K_d(5'\text{-TGTTA-3}')$.

TABLE 7 Discrimination of 5'-TGATT-3' and 5'-TGTTT-3'			
Pair†	5'-TGATT-3'	5'-TGTTT-3'	K_{rel}^{\ddagger}
Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.026 \mu M$	 $K_d = 0.005 \mu M$	5.2
Hp/Py	 $K_d = 0.53 \mu M$	 $K_d = 0.008 \mu M$	66
Py/Hp	 $K_d = 0.33 \mu M$	 $K_d = 0.59 \mu M$	0.56

*The reported equilibrium dissociation constants are the mean values obtained from two DNase I footprint titration experiments. The assays were carried out at 22 °C, pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the third position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'-TGATT-3')/K_d(5'-TGTTT-3')$.

EXAMPLE 5:

PREPARATION OF A BIFUNCTIONAL Hp-Py-Im-POLYAMIDE.

ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-NH₂. *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc-β-Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); also see PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat 3,3'-diamino-*N*-methylpropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImOpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy-β-Dp-NH₂* is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (93 mg, 46% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); ¹H NMR (DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.34 (s, 1 H), 10.30 (br s, 1 H), 10.25 (s, 1 H), 9.96 (s, 1 H), 9.95 (s, 1 H), 9.89 (s, 1 H), 9.24 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 1 H), 8.08 (t, 1 H, *J* = 5.6 Hz), 8.0 (m, 5 H), 7.62 (s, 1 H), 7.53 (s, 1 H), 7.42 (s, 1 H), 7.23 (d, 1H, *J* = 1.2 Hz), 7.21 (m, 2 H), 7.15 (m, 2 H), 7.13 (d, 1 H), 7.11 (m, 2 H), 7.04 (d, 1 H), 6.84 (m, 3 H), 3.98 (s, 3 H), 3.97 (s, 3 H), 3.92 (s, 3 H), 3.82 (m, 6 H), 3.80 (s, 3 H), 3.77 (d, 6 H), 3.35 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.8 Hz) 3.0-3.3 (m, 8 H), 2.86 (q, 2 H, *J* = 5.4 Hz), 2.66 (d, 3 H, *J* = 4.5 Hz), 2.31 (m, 4 H), 1.94

(quintet, 2 H, $J = 6.2$ Hz), 1.74 (m, 4 H); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1296.0 (1296.6 calc. for $C_{60}H_{78}N_{23}O_{11}$).

ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. Excess EDTA-dianhydride (50 mg) was dissolved in DMSO/NMP (1 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) by heating at 55 °C for 5 min. The dianhydride solution was added to *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -NH₂* (13 mg, 10 μ mol) dissolved in DMSO (750 μ L). The mixture was heated (55 °C, 25 min.) and the remaining EDTA-anhydride hydrolyzed (0.1M NaOH, 3 mL, 55 °C, 10 min). Aqueous TFA (0.1% wt/v) was added to adjust the total volume to 8 mL and the solution purified directly by reversed phase HPLC to provide *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA* as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (5.5 mg, 40% recovery). MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1570.9 (1570.7 calc. for $C_{70}H_{92}N_{25}O_{18}$).

ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA* (5 mg, 3.1 μ mol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μ L) and thiophenol (500 μ L) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was *slowly* added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, *ImImOpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA* (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μ L) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. *ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA* is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (3.2 mg, 72 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1556.6 (1556.7 calc. for $C_{69}H_{90}N_{25}O_{18}$).

ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-NH₂. *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin* was synthesized in a stepwise fashion by machine-assisted solid phase methods from Boc- β -Pam-Resin (0.66 mmol/g). Baird, E. E. & Dervan, P. B. describes the solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **118**, 6141-6146 (1996); *also see* PCT US 97/003332. 3-hydroxypyrrole-Boc-amino acid (0.7 mmol) was incorporated by placing the amino acid (0.5 mmol) and HBTU (0.5 mmol) in a machine synthesis cartridge. Upon automated delivery of DMF (2 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) activation occurs. A sample of *ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Pam-Resin* (400 mg, 0.40 mmol/gram) was placed in a glass 20 mL peptide synthesis vessel and treated with neat 3,3'-diamino-*N*-methylpropylamine (2 mL) and heated (55 °C) with periodic agitation for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered to remove resin, 0.1% (wt/v) TFA added (6 mL) and the resulting

solution purified by reversed phase HPLC. ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-NH₂ is recovered upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions as a white powder (104 mg, 54% recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 316 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1296.6 (1296.6 calc. for C₆₀H₇₈N₂₃O₁₁).

5
10
15
ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. Excess EDTA-dianhydride (50 mg) was dissolved in DMSO/NMP (1 mL) and DIEA (1 mL) by heating at 55 °C for 5 min. The dianhydride solution was added to ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -NH₂ (13 mg, 10 μ mol) dissolved in DMSO (750 μ L). The mixture was heated (55 °C, 25 min.) and the remaining EDTA-anhydride hydrolyzed (0.1M NaOH, 3 mL, 55 °C, 10 min). Aqueous TFA (0.1% wt/v) was added to adjust the total volume to 8 mL and the solution purified directly by reversed phase HPLC to provide ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (5.9 mg, 42% recovery). MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1570.8 (1570.7 calc. for C₇₀H₉₂N₂₅O₁₈).

20
25
30
ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA. In order to remove the methoxy protecting group, a sample of ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA (5 mg, 3.1 μ mol) was treated with sodium thiophenoxide at 100 °C for 2 h. DMF (1000 μ L) and thiophenol (500 μ L) were placed in a (13 x 100 mm) disposable Pyrex screw cap culture tube. A 60 % dispersion of sodium hydride in mineral oil (100 mg) was *slowly* added. Upon completion of the addition of the sodium hydride, ImImPyPy- γ -ImOpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA (5 mg) dissolved in DMF (500 μ L) was added. The solution was agitated, and placed in a 100 °C heat block, and deprotected for 2 h. Upon completion of the reaction the culture tube was cooled to 0°C, and 7 ml of a 20 % (wt/v) solution of trifluoroacetic acid added. The aqueous layer is separated from the resulting biphasic solution and purified by reversed phase HPLC. ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp-EDTA is recovered as a white powder upon lyophilization of the appropriate fractions (3.2 mg, 72 % recovery). UV (H₂O) λ_{max} 246, 312 (66,000); MALDI-TOF-MS (monoisotopic), 1555.9 (1556.7 calc. for C₆₉H₉₀N₂₅O₁₈).

30 EXAMPLE 6:

DETERMINATION OF POLYAMIDE BINDING ORIENTATION

35 Affinity cleavage experiments using hairpin polyamides modified with EDTA•Fe(II) at either the C-terminus or on the γ -turn, were used to determine polyamide binding orientation and stoichiometry. The results of affinity cleavage experiments are consistent only with recognition of 6-bp by an 8-ring hairpin complex and rule out any extended 1:1 or overlapped complex formation. In addition, affinity cleavage experiments reveal hairpin formation

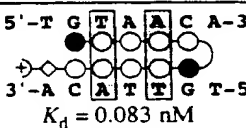
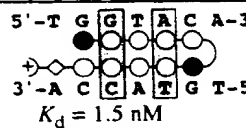
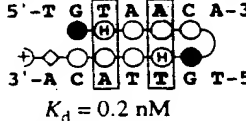
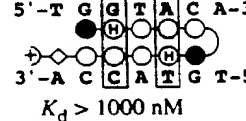
supporting the claim that it is the Hp/Py and Py/Hp pairing which form at both match and mismatch sites to discriminate A•T from T•A.

Affinity cleavage reactions were executed in a total volume of 40 μ L. A stock solution of polyamide or H₂O was added to a solution containing labeled restriction fragment (20,000 cpm), affording final solution conditions of 25 mM Tris-Acetate, 20 mM NaCl, 100 μ M/bp calf thymus DNA, and pH 7.0. Solutions were incubated for a minimum of 4 hours at 22°C. Subsequently, 4 μ L of freshly prepared 100 μ M Fe(NH₄)₂(SO₄)₂ was added and the solution allowed to equilibrate for 20 min. Cleavage reactions were initiated by the addition of 4 μ L of 100 mM dithiothreitol, allowed to proceed for 30 min at 22 °C, then stopped by the addition of 10 μ L of a solution containing 1.5 M NaOAc (pH 5.5), 0.28 mg/mL glycogen, and 14 μ M base pairs calf thymus DNA, and ethanol precipitated. The reactions were resuspended in 1x TBE/80% formamide loading buffer, denatured by heating at 85 °C for 15 min, and placed on ice. The reaction products were separated by electrophoresis on an 8% polyacrylamide gel (5% cross-link, 7 M urea) in 1x TBE at 2000 V for 1.5 hours. Gels were dried and exposed to a storage phosphor screen. Relative cleavage intensities were determined by volume integration of individual cleavage bands using ImageQuant software.

EXAMPLE 7: IMPROVEMENT TO POLYAMIDE SEQUENCE SPECIFICITY.

The polyamides of this invention provide improved specificity relative to existing polyamide technology. Turner, J. T., Baird, E. E., and Dervan, P.B. describe the recognition of seven base pair sequences in the minor groove of DNA by ten-ring pyrrole-imidazole polyamide hairpins *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1997** *119*, 7636. For example, quantitative DNaseI footprint titrations reveal that the 10-ring hairpin ImPyPyPyPy- γ -ImPyPyPyPy- β -Dp binds a 5'-TGTAACA-3' sequence with an equilibrium dissociation constant of 0.083 nM, and 18-fold specificity versus a single base mismatch site. A number of other sites are also bound on the 252-bp DNA fragment used for the footprint titration experiments. (Figure 13). Introduction of a Hp/Py and Py/Hp pair in the 10-ring polyamide, ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp, to recognize a T•A and A•T within the 7-bp target sequence, increases the sequence-specificity. For example, a single base mismatch site 5'-TGGAACA-3' is discriminated by > 5000-fold (Figure 13, Table 8). In fact all 245 7-bp mismatch sites present on the restriction fragment are discriminated > 5000-fold by the polyamide ImHpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPyPy- β -Dp (Figure 13). For cases where three A,T base pairs are present in succession it is preferred to substitute Py/Py in place of at least one Hp/Py or Py/Hp to provide for recognition of A•T and T•A at a single position.

TABLE 8 Equilibrium dissociation constants*

Polyamide†	5'-TGGTCA-3'	5'-TGGACA-3'	K_{rel}^\ddagger
Py/Py	 $K_d = 0.083 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d = 1.5 \text{ nM}$	18
Hp/Py	 $K_d = 0.2 \text{ nM}$	 $K_d > 1000 \text{ nM}$	>5000

*The reported dissociation constants are the average values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. The standard deviation for each data set is less than 15% of the reported number. Assays were carried out in the presence of 10 mM Tris•HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂ at pH 7.0 and 22 °C.

†Ring pairing opposite T•A and A•T in the fourth position.

‡Calculated as $K_d(5'-TGGTCA-3') / K_d(5'-TGTAACA-3')$.

EXAMPLE 8: USE OF PAIRING CODE

There are 256 possible four base pair combinations of A, T, G, and C. Of these, there are a possible 240 four base pair sequences which contain at least 1 A•T or T•A base pair and

therefore can advantageously use an Hp/Py, or Py/Hp carboxamide binding. Polyamides binding to any of these sequences can be designed in accordance with the code of TABLE 2. Table 9 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (1-16) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WGTNNW-3' sequences (W = A or T, X = A, G, C, or T). Table 10 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (17-32) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WGANNW-3' sequences (17-32). Table 11 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (33-44) which recognize twelve 5'-WGGNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 11 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G1-G4) which target the four 5'-WGGNNW-3' sequences (G1-G4) which contain exclusively G•C base pairs. Table 12 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (45-56) which recognize twelve 5'-WGCNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 12 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G5-G8) which target the four 5'-WGCNNW-3' sequences (G5-G8) which contain exclusively G•C base pairs. Table 13 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (57-72) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTTNNW-3' sequences (57-72). Table 14 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (73-88) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTANNW-3' sequences (73-88). Table 15 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (89-104) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTGNNW-3' sequences (89-104). Table 16 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (105-120) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WTCNNW-3' sequences (105-120). Table 17 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (121-136) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WATNNW-3' sequences (121-136). Table 18 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (137-152) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WAANNW-3' sequences (137-152). Table 19 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (153-168) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WAGNNW-3' sequences (153-168). Table 20 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (169-184) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WACNNW-3' sequences (169-184). Table 21 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (185-200) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WCTNNW-3' sequences (185-200). Table 22 lists the sixteen eight-ring hairpin polyamides (201-216) which recognize the sixteen 5'-WCANNW-3' sequences (201-216). Table 23 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (217-228) which recognize the twelve 5'-WCGNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 23 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G9-G12) which target the four 5'-WCGNNW-3' sequences (G9-G12) which contain exclusively C•G base pairs. Table 24 lists the twelve eight-ring hairpin polyamides (229-240) which recognize the twelve 5'-WCCNNW-3' sequences which contain at least one A,T base pair. Table 24 lists the four eight-ring hairpin polyamides (G13-G16) which target the four 5'-WCCNNW-3' sequences (G13-G16) which contain exclusively C•G base pairs.

TABLE 9: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGTNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	1) 5'-W G T T T W-3'	1) ImHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	2) 5'-W G T T A W-3'	2) ImHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
10	3) 5'-W G T T G W-3'	3) ImHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	4) 5'-W G T T C W-3'	4) ImHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	5) 5'-W G T A T W-3'	5) ImHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	6) 5'-W G T A A W-3'	6) ImHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	7) 5'-W G T A G W-3'	7) ImHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
20	8) 5'-W G T A C W-3'	8) ImHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
	9) 5'-W G T G T W-3'	9) ImHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	10) 5'-W G T G A W-3'	10) ImHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	11) 5'-W G T G G W-3'	11) ImHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	12) 5'-W G T G C W-3'	12) ImHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
30	13) 5'-W G T C T W-3'	13) ImHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
	14) 5'-W G T C A W-3'	14) ImHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	15) 5'-W G T C G W-3'	15) ImHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	16) 5'-W G T C C W-3'	16) ImHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 10: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	17) 5'-W G A T T W-3'	17) ImPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	18) 5'-W G A T A W-3'	18) ImPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
	19) 5'-W G A T G W-3'	19) ImPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
10	20) 5'-W G A T C W-3'	20) ImPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	21) 5'-W G A A T W-3'	21) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpPy
15	22) 5'-W G A A A W-3'	22) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpPy
	23) 5'-W G A A G W-3'	23) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpPy
	24) 5'-W G A A C W-3'	24) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpPy
20	25) 5'-W G A G T W-3'	25) ImPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	26) 5'-W G A G A W-3'	26) ImPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
25	27) 5'-W G A G G W-3'	27) ImPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
	28) 5'-W G A G C W-3'	28) ImPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	29) 5'-W G A C T W-3'	29) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpPy
30	30) 5'-W G A C A W-3'	30) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpPy
	31) 5'-W G A C G W-3'	31) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpPy
35	32) 5'-W G A C C W-3'	32) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpPy

TABLE 11: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	33) 5'-W G G T T W-3'	33) ImImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	34) 5'-W G G T A W-3'	34) ImImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
10	35) 5'-W G G T G W-3'	35) ImImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	36) 5'-W G G T C W-3'	36) ImImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	37) 5'-W G G A T W-3'	37) ImImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	38) 5'-W G G A A W-3'	38) ImImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	39) 5'-W G G A G W-3'	39) ImImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
	40) 5'-W G G A C W-3'	40) ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
20	41) 5'-W G G G T W-3'	41) ImImImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	42) 5'-W G G G A W-3'	42) ImImImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	43) 5'-W G G C T W-3'	43) ImImPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
	44) 5'-W G G C A W-3'	44) ImImPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
30	G1) 5'-W G G G G W-3'	G1) ImImImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	G2) 5'-W G G G C W-3'	G2) ImImImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	G3) 5'-W G G C G W-3'	G3) ImImPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	G4) 5'-W G G C C W-3'	G4) ImImPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 12: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WGCNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	45) 5'-W G C T T W-3'	45) ImPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	46) 5'-W G C T A W-3'	46) ImPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImPy
	47) 5'-W G C T G W-3'	47) ImPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImPy
10	48) 5'-W G C T C W-3'	48) ImPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	49) 5'-W G C A T W-3'	49) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImPy
15	50) 5'-W G C A A W-3'	50) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImPy
	51) 5'-W G C A G W-3'	51) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImPy
	52) 5'-W G C A C W-3'	52) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImPy
20	53) 5'-W G C G T W-3'	53) ImPyImHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	54) 5'-W G C G A W-3'	54) ImPyImPy- γ -HpPyImPy
25	55) 5'-W G C C T W-3'	55) ImPyPyHp- γ -PyImImPy
	56) 5'-W G C C A W-3'	56) ImPyPyPy- γ -HpImImPy
	G5) 5'-W G C G G W-3'	G5) ImPyImIm- γ -PyPyImPy
30	G6) 5'-W G C G C W-3'	G6) ImPyImPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	G7) 5'-W G C C G W-3'	G7) ImPyPyIm- γ -PyImImPy
35	G8) 5'-W G C C C W-3'	G8) ImPyPyPy- γ -ImImImPy

TABLE 13: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTTNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	57) 5'-W T T T T W-3'	57) HpHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	58) 5'-W T T T A W-3'	58) HpHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
	59) 5'-W T T T G W-3'	59) HpHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
10	60) 5'-W T T T C W-3'	60) HpHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	61) 5'-W T T A T W-3'	61) HpHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	62) 5'-W T T A A W-3'	62) HpHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	63) 5'-W T T A G W-3'	63) HpHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
	64) 5'-W T T A C W-3'	64) HpHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
20	65) 5'-W T T G T W-3'	65) HpHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	66) 5'-W T T G A W-3'	66) HpHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	67) 5'-W T T G G W-3'	67) HpHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
	68) 5'-W T T G C W-3'	68) HpHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	69) 5'-W T T C T W-3'	69) HpHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
30	70) 5'-W T T C A W-3'	70) HpHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	71) 5'-W T T C G W-3'	71) HpHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	72) 5'-W T T C C W-3'	72) HpHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 14: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	73) 5'-W T A T T W-3'	73) HpPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	74) 5'-W T A T A W-3'	74) HpPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
10	75) 5'-W T A T G W-3'	75) HpPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
	76) 5'-W T A T C W-3'	76) HpPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
	77) 5'-W T A A T W-3'	77) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpPy
15	78) 5'-W T A A A W-3'	78) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpPy
	79) 5'-W T A A G W-3'	79) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpPy
20	80) 5'-W T A A C W-3'	80) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpPy
	81) 5'-W T A G T W-3'	81) HpPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpPy
	82) 5'-W T A G A W-3'	82) HpPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpPy
25	83) 5'-W T A G G W-3'	83) HpPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpPy
	84) 5'-W T A G C W-3'	84) HpPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpPy
30	85) 5'-W T A C T W-3'	85) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpPy
	86) 5'-W T A C A W-3'	86) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpPy
	87) 5'-W T A C G W-3'	87) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpPy
35	88) 5'-W T A C C W-3'	88) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpPy

TABLE 15: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	89) 5'-W T G T T W-3'	89) HpImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	90) 5'-W T G T A W-3'	90) HpImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
	91) 5'-W T G T G W-3'	91) HpImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
10	92) 5'-W T G T C W-3'	92) HpImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	93) 5'-W T G A T W-3'	93) HpImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyPy
15	94) 5'-W T G A A W-3'	94) HpImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyPy
	95) 5'-W T G A G W-3'	95) HpImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyPy
	96) 5'-W T G A C W-3'	96) HpImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy
20	97) 5'-W T G G T W-3'	97) HpImImHp- γ -PyPyPyPy
	98) 5'-W T G G A W-3'	98) HpImImPy- γ -HpPyPyPy
25	99) 5'-W T G C T W-3'	99) HpImPyHp- γ -PyImPyPy
	100) 5'-W T G C A W-3'	100) HpImPyPy- γ -HpImPyPy
	101) 5'-W T G G G W-3'	101) HpImImIm- γ -PyPyPyPy
30	102) 5'-W T G G C W-3'	102) HpImImPy- γ -ImPyPyPy
	103) 5'-W T G C G W-3'	103) HpImPyIm- γ -PyImPyPy
35	104) 5'-W T G C C W-3'	104) HpImPyPy- γ -ImImPyPy

TABLE 16: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WTCNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	105) 5'-W T C T T W-3'	105) HpPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	106) 5'-W T C T A W-3'	106) HpPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImPy
	107) 5'-W T C T G W-3'	107) HpPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImPy
10	108) 5'-W T C T C W-3'	108) HpPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	109) 5'-W T C A T W-3'	109) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImPy
15	110) 5'-W T C A A W-3'	110) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImPy
	111) 5'-W T C A G W-3'	111) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImPy
	112) 5'-W T C A C W-3'	112) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImPy
20	113) 5'-W T C G T W-3'	113) HpPyImHp- γ -PyPyImPy
	114) 5'-W T C G A W-3'	114) HpPyImPy- γ -HpPyImPy
25	115) 5'-W T C C T W-3'	115) HpPyPyHp- γ -PyImImPy
	116) 5'-W T C C A W-3'	116) HpPyPyPy- γ -HpImImPy
	117) 5'-W T C G G W-3'	117) HpPyImIm- γ -PyPyImPy
30	118) 5'-W T C G C W-3'	118) HpPyImPy- γ -ImPyImPy
	119) 5'-W T C C G W-3'	119) HpPyPyIm- γ -PyImImPy
35	120) 5'-W T C C C W-3'	120) HpPyPyPy- γ -ImImImPy

TABLE 17: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WATNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	121) 5'-W A T T T W-3'	121) PyHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	122) 5'-W A T T A W-3'	122) PyHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
10	123) 5'-W A T T G W-3'	123) PyHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
	124) 5'-W A T T C W-3'	124) PyHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
15	125) 5'-W A T A T W-3'	125) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyHp
	126) 5'-W A T A A W-3'	126) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyHp
	127) 5'-W A T A G W-3'	127) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyHp
20	128) 5'-W A T A C W-3'	128) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyHp
	129) 5'-W A T G T W-3'	129) PyHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
25	130) 5'-W A T G A W-3'	130) PyHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
	131) 5'-W A T G G W-3'	131) PyHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
	132) 5'-W A T G C W-3'	132) PyHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
30	133) 5'-W A T C T W-3'	133) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyHp
	134) 5'-W A T C A W-3'	134) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyHp
35	135) 5'-W A T C G W-3'	135) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyHp
	136) 5'-W A T C C W-3'	136) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyHp

TABLE 18: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WAANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	137) 5'-W A A T T W-3'	137) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpHp
	138) 5'-W A A T A W-3'	138) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpHp
10	139) 5'-W A A T G W-3'	139) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpHp
	140) 5'-W A A T C W-3'	140) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpHp
	141) 5'-W A A A T W-3'	141) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpHp
15	142) 5'-W A A A A W-3'	142) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpHp
	143) 5'-W A A A G W-3'	143) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpHp
20	144) 5'-W A A A C W-3'	144) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpHp
	145) 5'-W A A G T W-3'	145) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpHp
	146) 5'-W A A G A W-3'	146) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpHp
25	147) 5'-W A A G G W-3'	147) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpHp
	148) 5'-W A A G C W-3'	148) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpHp
30	149) 5'-W A A C T W-3'	149) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpHp
	150) 5'-W A A C A W-3'	150) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpHp
	151) 5'-W A A C G W-3'	151) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpHp
35	152) 5'-W A A C C W-3'	152) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpHp

TABLE 19: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WAGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	153) 5'-W A G T T W-3'	153) PyImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	154) 5'-W A G T A W-3'	154) PyImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
	155) 5'-W A G T G W-3'	155) PyImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
10	156) 5'-W A G T C W-3'	156) PyImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
	157) 5'-W A G A T W-3'	157) PyImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyHp
15	158) 5'-W A G A A W-3'	158) PyImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyHp
	159) 5'-W A G A G W-3'	159) PyImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyHp
	160) 5'-W A G A C W-3'	160) PyImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyHp
20	161) 5'-W A G G T W-3'	161) PyImImHp- γ -PyPyPyHp
	162) 5'-W A G G A W-3'	162) PyImImPy- γ -HpPyPyHp
25	163) 5'-W A G C T W-3'	163) PyImPyHp- γ -PyImPyHp
	164) 5'-W A G C A W-3'	164) PyImPyPy- γ -HpImPyHp
	165) 5'-W A G G G W-3'	165) PyImImIm- γ -PyPyPyHp
30	166) 5'-W A G G C W-3'	166) PyImImPy- γ -ImPyPyHp
	167) 5'-W A G C G W-3'	167) PyImPyIm- γ -PyImPyHp
35	168) 5'-W A G C C W-3'	168) PyImPyPy- γ -ImImPyHp

TABLE 20: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WACNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	169) 5'-W A C T T W-3'	169) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImHp
	170) 5'-W A C T A W-3'	170) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImHp
	171) 5'-W A C T G W-3'	171) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImHp
10	172) 5'-W A C T C W-3'	172) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImHp
	173) 5'-W A C A T W-3'	173) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImHp
15	174) 5'-W A C A A W-3'	174) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImHp
	175) 5'-W A C A G W-3'	175) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImHp
	176) 5'-W A C A C W-3'	176) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImHp
20	177) 5'-W A C G T W-3'	177) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyImHp
	178) 5'-W A C G A W-3'	178) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyImHp
25	179) 5'-W A C C T W-3'	179) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImImHp
	180) 5'-W A C C A W-3'	180) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImImHp
	181) 5'-W A C G G W-3'	181) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyImHp
30	182) 5'-W A C G C W-3'	182) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyImHp
	183) 5'-W A C C G W-3'	183) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImImHp
35	184) 5'-W A C C C W-3'	184) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImImHp

TABLE 21: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCTNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	185) 5'-W C T T T W-3'	185) PyHpHpHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	186) 5'-W C T T A W-3'	186) PyHpHpPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
	187) 5'-W C T T G W-3'	187) PyHpHpIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
10	188) 5'-W C T T C W-3'	188) PyHpHpPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	189) 5'-W C T A T W-3'	189) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyHpPyIm
15	190) 5'-W C T A A W-3'	190) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpHpPyIm
	191) 5'-W C T A G W-3'	191) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyHpPyIm
	192) 5'-W C T A C W-3'	192) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImHpPyIm
20	193) 5'-W C T G T W-3'	193) PyHpImHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	194) 5'-W C T G A W-3'	194) PyHpImPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
25	195) 5'-W C T G G W-3'	195) PyHpImIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
	196) 5'-W C T G C W-3'	196) PyHpImPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	197) 5'-W C T C T W-3'	197) PyHpPyHp- γ -PyImPyIm
30	198) 5'-W C T C A W-3'	198) PyHpPyPy- γ -HpImPyIm
	199) 5'-W C T C G W-3'	199) PyHpPyIm- γ -PyImPyIm
35	200) 5'-W C T C C W-3'	200) PyHpPyPy- γ -ImImPyIm

TABLE 22: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCANNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	201) 5'-W C A T T W-3'	201) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyHpIm
	202) 5'-W C A T A W-3'	202) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyHpIm
10	203) 5'-W C A T G W-3'	203) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyHpIm
	204) 5'-W C A T C W-3'	204) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyHpIm
	205) 5'-W C A A T W-3'	205) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpHpIm
15	206) 5'-W C A A A W-3'	206) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpHpIm
	207) 5'-W C A A G W-3'	207) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpHpIm
20	208) 5'-W C A A C W-3'	208) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpHpIm
	209) 5'-W C A G T W-3'	209) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyHpIm
	210) 5'-W C A G A W-3'	210) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyHpIm
25	211) 5'-W C A G G W-3'	211) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyHpIm
	212) 5'-W C A G C W-3'	212) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyHpIm
30	213) 5'-W C A C T W-3'	213) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImHpIm
	214) 5'-W C A C A W-3'	214) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImHpIm
	215) 5'-W C A C G W-3'	215) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImHpIm
35	216) 5'-W C A C C W-3'	216) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImHpIm

TABLE 23: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCGNNW-3'

	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	217) 5'-W C G T T W-3'	217) PyImHpHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	218) 5'-W C G T A W-3'	218) PyImHpPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
	219) 5'-W C G T G W-3'	219) PyImHpIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
10	220) 5'-W C G T C W-3'	220) PyImHpPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	221) 5'-W C G A T W-3'	221) PyImPyHp- γ -PyHpPyIm
15	222) 5'-W C G A A W-3'	222) PyImPyPy- γ -HpHpPyIm
	223) 5'-W C G A G W-3'	223) PyImPyIm- γ -PyHpPyIm
	224) 5'-W C G A C W-3'	224) PyImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyIm
20	225) 5'-W C G G T W-3'	225) PyImImHp- γ -PyPyPyIm
	226) 5'-W C G G A W-3'	226) PyImImPy- γ -HpPyPyIm
25	227) 5'-W C G C T W-3'	227) PyImPyHp- γ -PyImPyIm
	228) 5'-W C G C A W-3'	228) PyImPyPy- γ -HpImPyIm
	G9) 5'-W C G G G W-3'	G9) PyImImIm- γ -PyPyPyIm
30	G10) 5'-W C G G C W-3'	G10) PyImImPy- γ -ImPyPyIm
	G11) 5'-W C G C G W-3'	G11) PyImPyIm- γ -PyImPyIm
35	G12) 5'-W C G C C W-3'	G12) PyImPyPy- γ -ImImPyIm

TABLE 24: 8-ring Hairpin Polyamides for recognition of 6-bp 5'-WCCNNW-3'

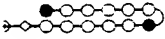
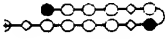
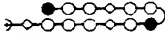
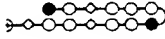
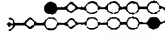
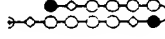
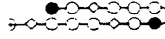
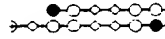
	DNA sequence	aromatic amino acid sequence
5	229) 5'-W C C T T W-3'	229) PyPyHpHp- γ -PyPyImIm
	230) 5'-W C C T A W-3'	230) PyPyHpPy- γ -HpPyImIm
	231) 5'-W C C T G W-3'	231) PyPyHpIm- γ -PyPyImIm
10	232) 5'-W C C T C W-3'	232) PyPyHpPy- γ -ImPyImIm
	233) 5'-W C C A T W-3'	233) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyHpImIm
15	234) 5'-W C C A A W-3'	234) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpHpImIm
	235) 5'-W C C A G W-3'	235) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyHpImIm
	236) 5'-W C C A C W-3'	236) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImHpImIm
20	237) 5'-W C C G T W-3'	237) PyPyImHp- γ -PyPyImIm
	238) 5'-W C C G A W-3'	238) PyPyImPy- γ -HpPyImIm
25	239) 5'-W C C C T W-3'	239) PyPyPyHp- γ -PyImImIm
	240) 5'-W C C C A W-3'	240) PyPyPyPy- γ -HpImImIm
	G13) 5'-W C C G G W-3'	G13) PyPyImIm- γ -PyPyImIm
30	G14) 5'-W C C G C W-3'	G14) PyPyImPy- γ -ImPyImIm
	G15) 5'-W C C C G W-3'	G15) PyPyPyIm- γ -PyImImIm
35	G16) 5'-W C C C C W-3'	G16) PyPyPyPy- γ -ImImImIm

EXAMPLE 9:**Aliphatic/Aromatic amino acid pairing for recognition of the DNA minor groove.**

Selective placement of an aliphatic β -alanine (β) residue paired side-by-side with either a pyrrole (Py) or imidazole (Im) aromatic amino acid is found to compensate for sequence composition effects for recognition of the minor groove of DNA by hairpin pyrrole-imidazole polyamides. A series of polyamides were prepared which contain pyrrole and imidazole aromatic amino acids, as well as γ -aminobutyric acid (γ) "turn" and β -alanine "spring" aliphatic amino acid residues. The binding affinities and specificities of these polyamides are regulated by the placement of paired β/β Py/ β and Im/ β residues. Quantitative footprint titrations demonstrate that replacing two Py/Py pairings in a 12-ring hairpin (6- γ -6) with two Py/ β

pairings affords 10-fold enhanced affinity and similar sequence specificity for an 8-bp target sequence.

Table 25 Equilibrium association constants (M^{-1}) for polyamides.^{a-c}

Polyamide	5'-TGT T AACA-3'	5'-TGTGAACA-3'	Specificity ^d
	2.5×10^9	3.9×10^8	6
	1.3×10^9	2.0×10^8	7
	1.7×10^{10}	2.7×10^9	6
	1.2×10^{11}	2.2×10^9	55
	6.6×10^9	2.5×10^8	26
	4.5×10^{10}	7.7×10^9	6
	2.7×10^{10}	5.7×10^9	5
	$\leq 1 \times 10^8$	$\leq 1 \times 10^8$	1

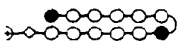
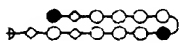
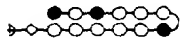
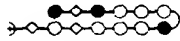
^aValues reported are the mean values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. ^bThe assays were carried out at 22 °C at pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂. ^cMatch site association constants and specificities higher than the parent hairpin are shown in boldtype. ^dSpecificity is calculated as $K_a(\text{match}) / K_a(\text{mismatch})$.

5

The 6-γ-6 hairpin ImPyImPyPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPyPyPy-β-Dp, which contains six consecutive amino acid pairings, is unable to discriminate a single-base-pair mismatch site 5'-TGT**T**AACA-3' from a 5'-TGTGAACA-3' match site. The hairpin polyamide Im-β-ImPyPyPyPy-γ-ImPyPyPyPy-β-Py-β-Dp binds to the 8-bp match sequence 5'-TGTGAACA-3' with an equilibrium association constant of $K_a = 2.4 \times 10^{10} M^{-1}$ and > 48-fold specificity versus the 5'-TGT**T**AACA-3' single-base-pair mismatch site.

10

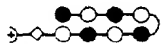
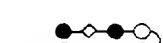
Table 26 Equilibrium association constants (M^{-1}) for polyamides.^{a-c}

Polyamide	5'-TGTTAACA-3'	5'-TGTGAACA-3'	Specificity ^d
	2.5×10^9	3.9×10^8	6
	6.6×10^9	2.5×10^8	26
	5×10^9	5×10^9	1
	$\leq 5 \times 10^8$	2.4×10^{10}	≥ 48

^a Values reported for 1, 5, and 10 are the mean values obtained from three DNase I footprint titration experiments. ^b The assays were carried out at 22 °C at pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂. ^c Match site association constants and specificities higher than parent hairpins are shown in boldtype. ^d Specificity is calculated as $K_a(\text{match}) / K_a(\text{mismatch})$.

Modeling indicates that the β -alanine residue relaxes ligand curvature, providing for optimal hydrogen bond formation between the floor of the minor groove and both Im-residues within the Im- β -Im polyamide subunit. This observation provided the basis for design of a hairpin polyamide, Im- β -ImPy- γ -Im- β -ImPy- β -Dp, which incorporates Im/ β pairings to recognize a "problematic" 5'-GCGC-3' sequence at subnanomolar concentrations.

Table 27 Equilibrium association constants (M^{-1}) for polyamides.^{a-b}

Polyamide	5'-TGCGCA-3'	5'-TGGCCA-3'	5'-TGGGGA-3'
	3.7×10^7	$< 10^7$	$< 10^7$
	3.7×10^9	1.4×10^8	1.1×10^8

^a Values reported are the mean values obtained from a minimum of three DNase I footprint titration experiments. ^b The assays were carried out at 22 °C at pH 7.0 in the presence of 10 mM Tris-HCl, 10 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl₂, and 5 mM CaCl₂.

These results identify Im/ β and β /Im pairings that respectively discriminate G•C and C•G from A•T/T•A as well as Py/ β and β /Py pairings that discriminate A•T/T•A from G•C/C•G. These aliphatic/aromatic amino acid pairings will facilitate the design of hairpin polyamides which recognize both a larger binding site size as well as a more diverse sequence repertoire.

EXAMPLE 10:

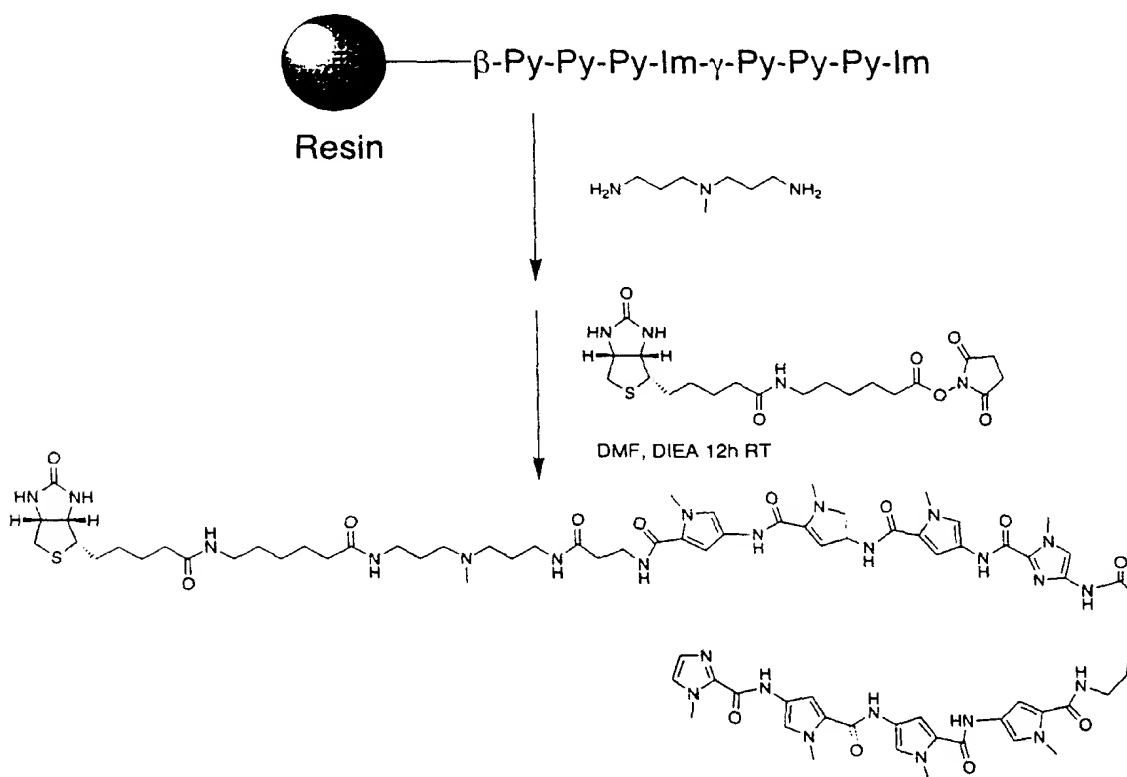
POLYAMIDE BIOTIN CONJUGATES

Bifunctional conjugates prepared between sequence specific DNA binding polyamides and biotin are useful for a variety of applications. First, such compounds can be readily attached

to a variety of matrices through the strong interaction of biotin with the protein streptavidin. Readily available streptavidin-derivatized matrices include magnetic beads for separations as well as resins for chromatography.

A number of such polyamide-biotin conjugates have been synthesized by solid phase synthetic methods outlined in detail above. Following resin cleavage with a variety of diamines, the polyamides were reacted with various biotin carboxylic acid derivatives to yield bifunctional conjugates. The bifunctional conjugates were purified by HPLC and characterized by MALDI-TOF mass spectroscopy and ¹H NMR.

The scheme for the synthesis of an exemplary biotin-polyamide conjugate is shown below.



The foregoing is intended to be illustrative of the present invention, but not limiting. Numerous variations and modifications of the present invention may be effected without departing from the true spirit and scope of the invention.

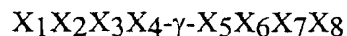
What is claimed is:

1. In a polyamide having at least three consecutive carboxamide pairs for binding to at least three DNA base pairs in the minor groove of a duplex DNA sequence having at least one A•T or T•A DNA base pair, the improvement comprising selecting a Hp/Py carboxamide pair to correspond to a T•A base pair in the minor groove of the duplex DNA sequence or selecting a Py/Hp carboxamide pair to bind to an A•T DNA base pair in the minor groove of the duplex DNA sequence.
2. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein at least four consecutive carboxamide pairs bind to at least four DNA base pairs.
3. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein at least five consecutive carboxamide pairs bind to at least five DNA base pairs.
4. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein at least six consecutive carboxamide pairs bind to at least six DNA base pairs.
5. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the A•T or T•A base pair has a G•C or C•G base pair on either side.
6. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a regulatory sequence.
7. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a promoter sequence.
8. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a coding sequence.
9. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the duplex DNA sequence is a non-coding sequence.
10. The polyamide of claim 1 wherein the binding of the carboxamide pairs to the DNA base pairs modulates the expression of a gene.

11. A composition comprising an effective amount of the polyamide of claim 1 and a pharmologically suitable excipient.

12. A diagnostic kit comprising the polyamide of claim 1.

13. A polyamide according to claim 1 having the formula:



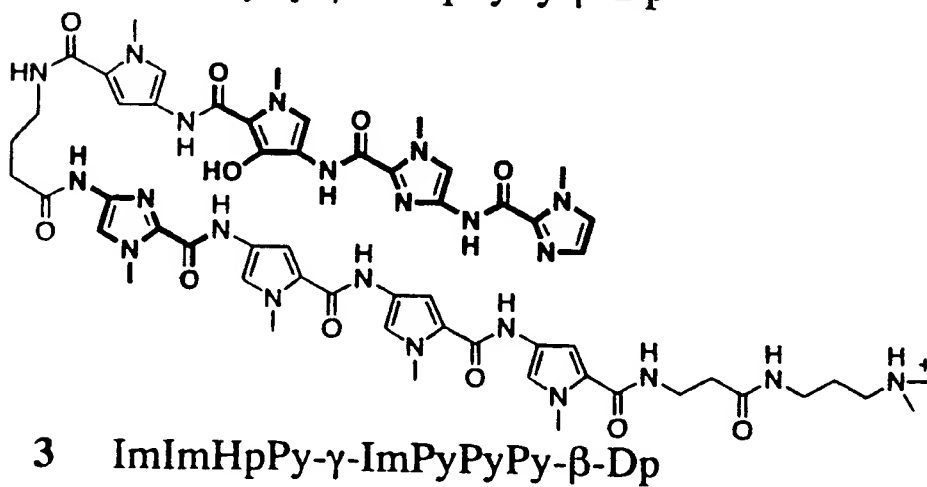
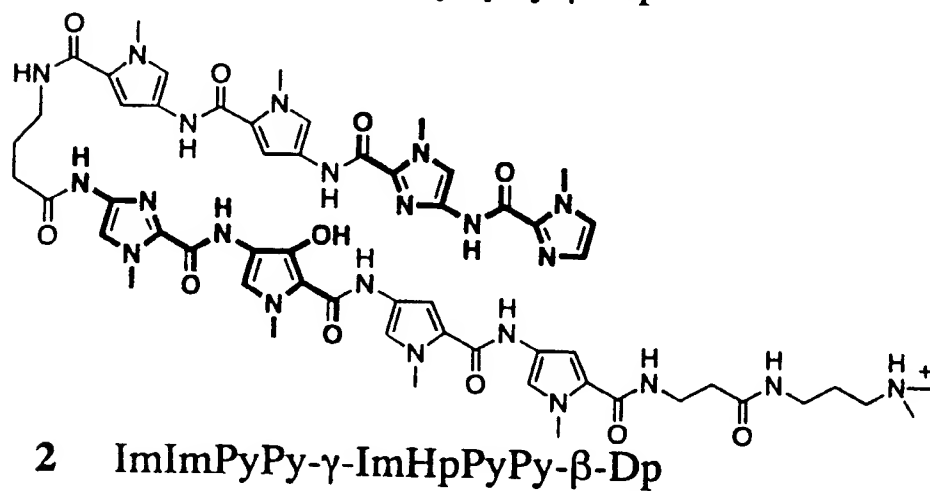
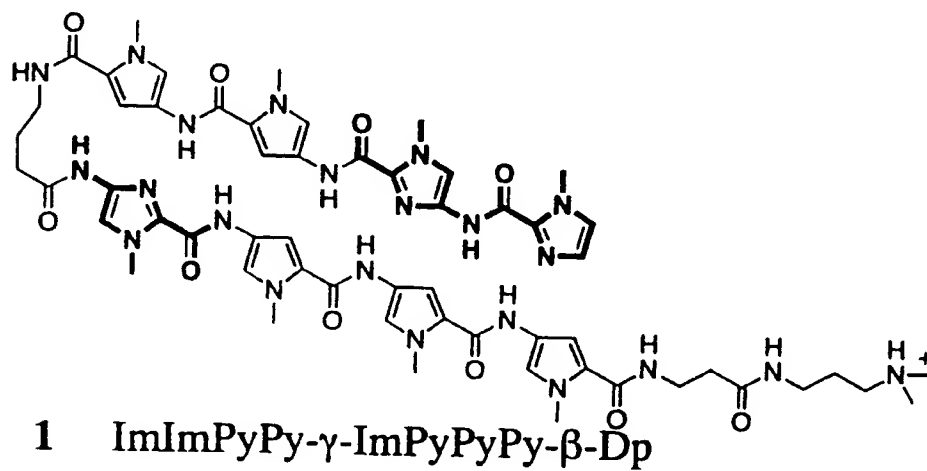
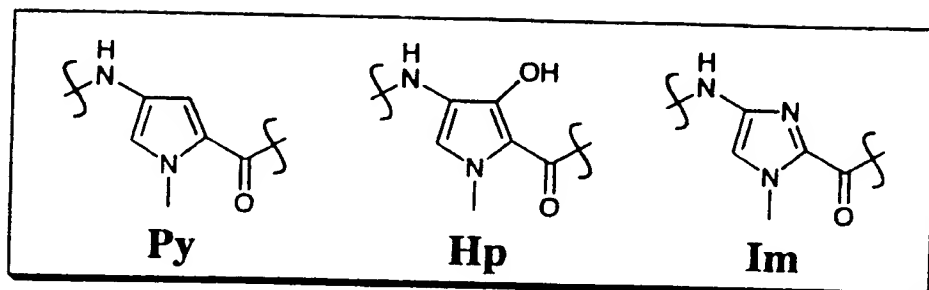
wherein γ is -NH-CH₂-CH₂-CH₂-CONH- hairpin linkage derived from γ -aminobutyric acid or a chiral hairpin linkage derived from R-2,4-diaminobutyric acid; X₄/X₅, X₃/X₆, X₂/X₇, and X₁/X₈ represent carboxamide binding pairs which bind the DNA base pairs wherein at least one binding pair is Hp/Py or Py/Hp and the other binding pairs are selected from Py/Im Im/Py to correspond to the DNA base pair in the minor groove to be bound.

14. The polyamide of claim 13 wherein there is at least one β -alanine in a non- Hp containing binding pair.

15. The polyamide of claim 13 wherein dimethylaminopropylamide is covalently bound to X₁ or X₈.

16. A polyamide selected from those listed in Tables 9-24 as compounds 1 through 240.

17. A polyamide selected from shown in Fig. 4.

**FIG. 1**

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

2 / 18

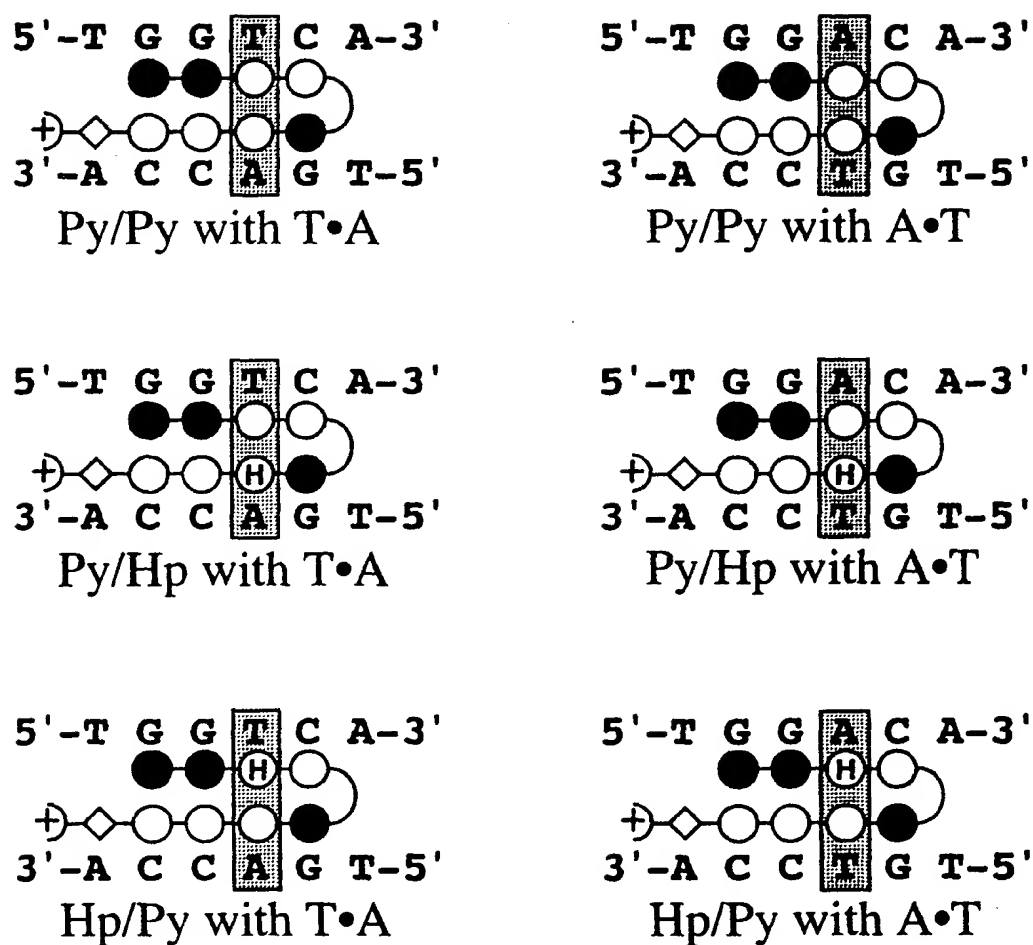


FIG. 2

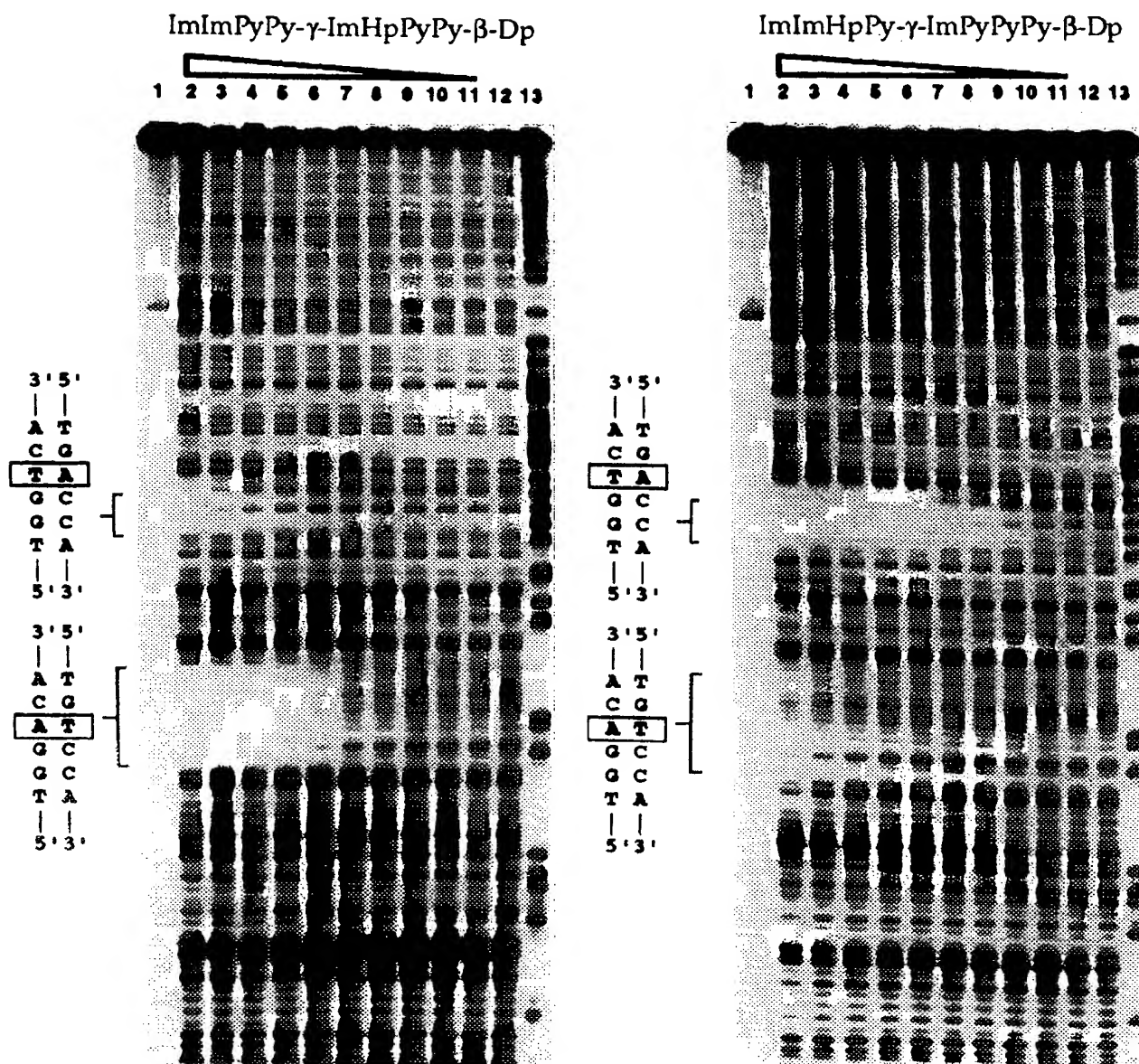
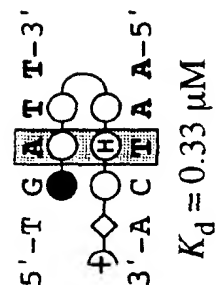
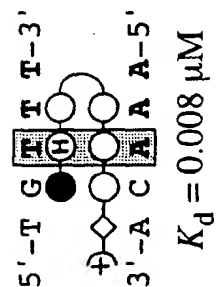
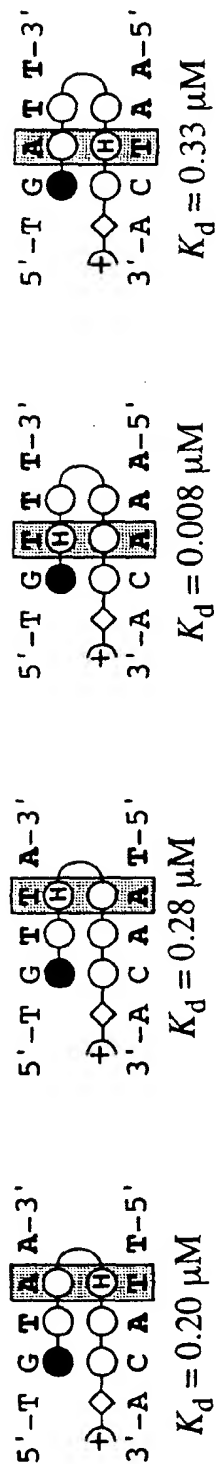


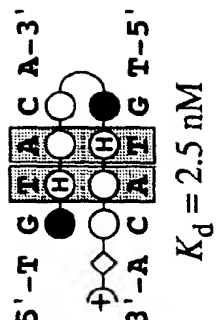
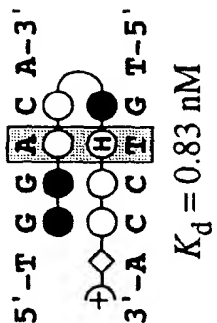
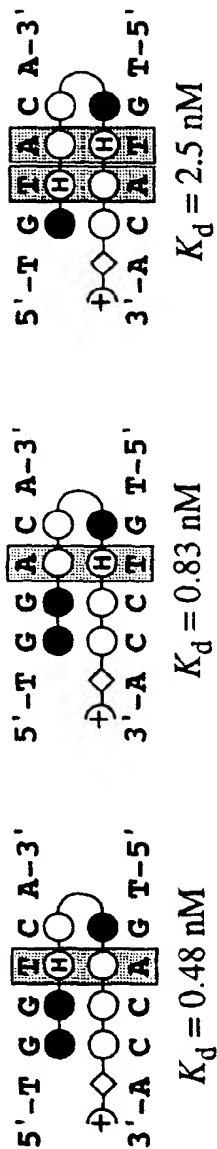
FIG. 3

4 / 18

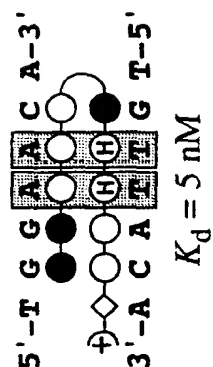
6-Ring Hairpin Hp-Py-Im-Polyamides



8-Ring Hairpin Hp-Py-Im-Polyamides

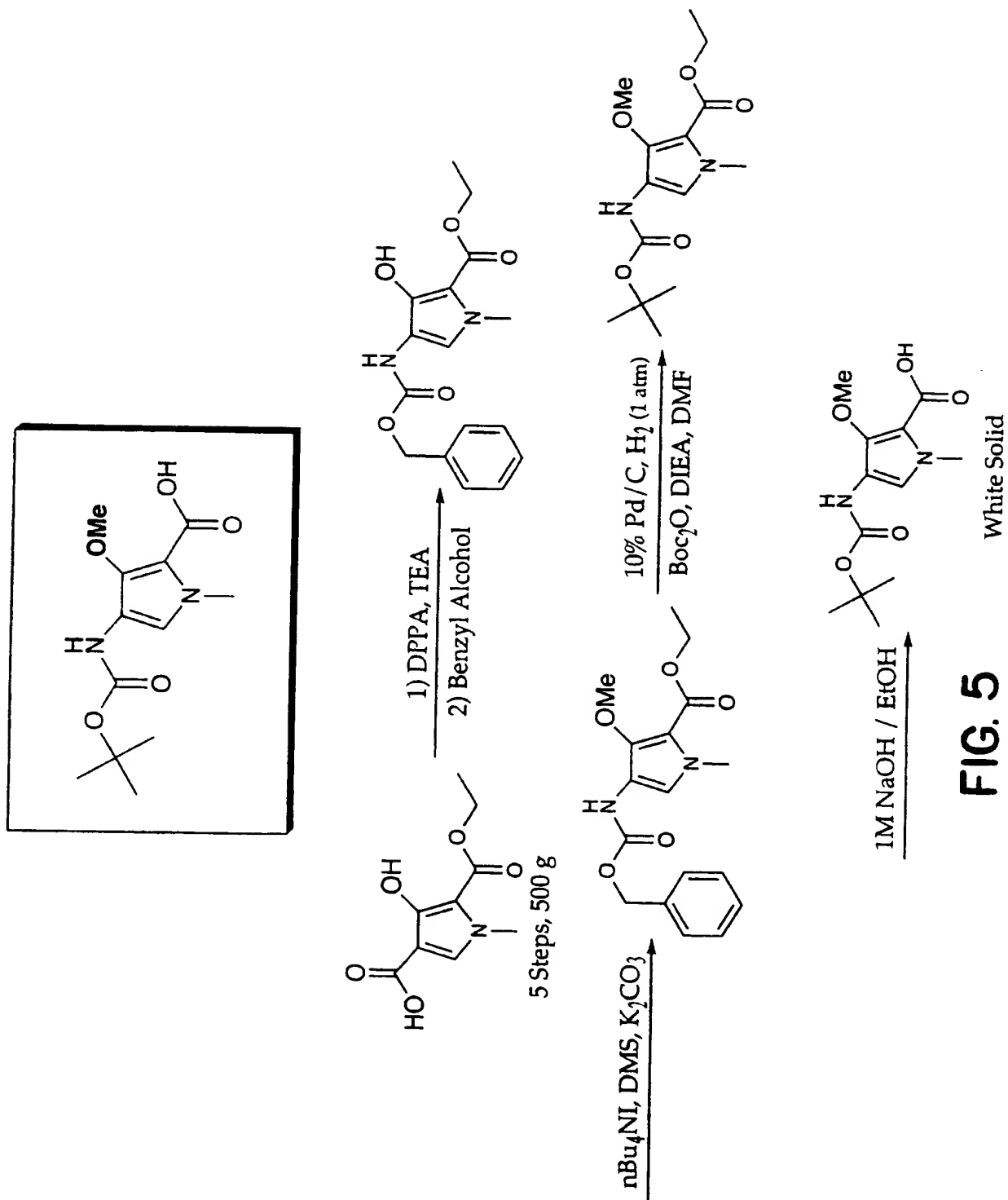


10-Ring Hairpin Hp-Py-Im-Polyamides



$K_d = 5 \text{ nM}$

FIG. 4



6 / 18

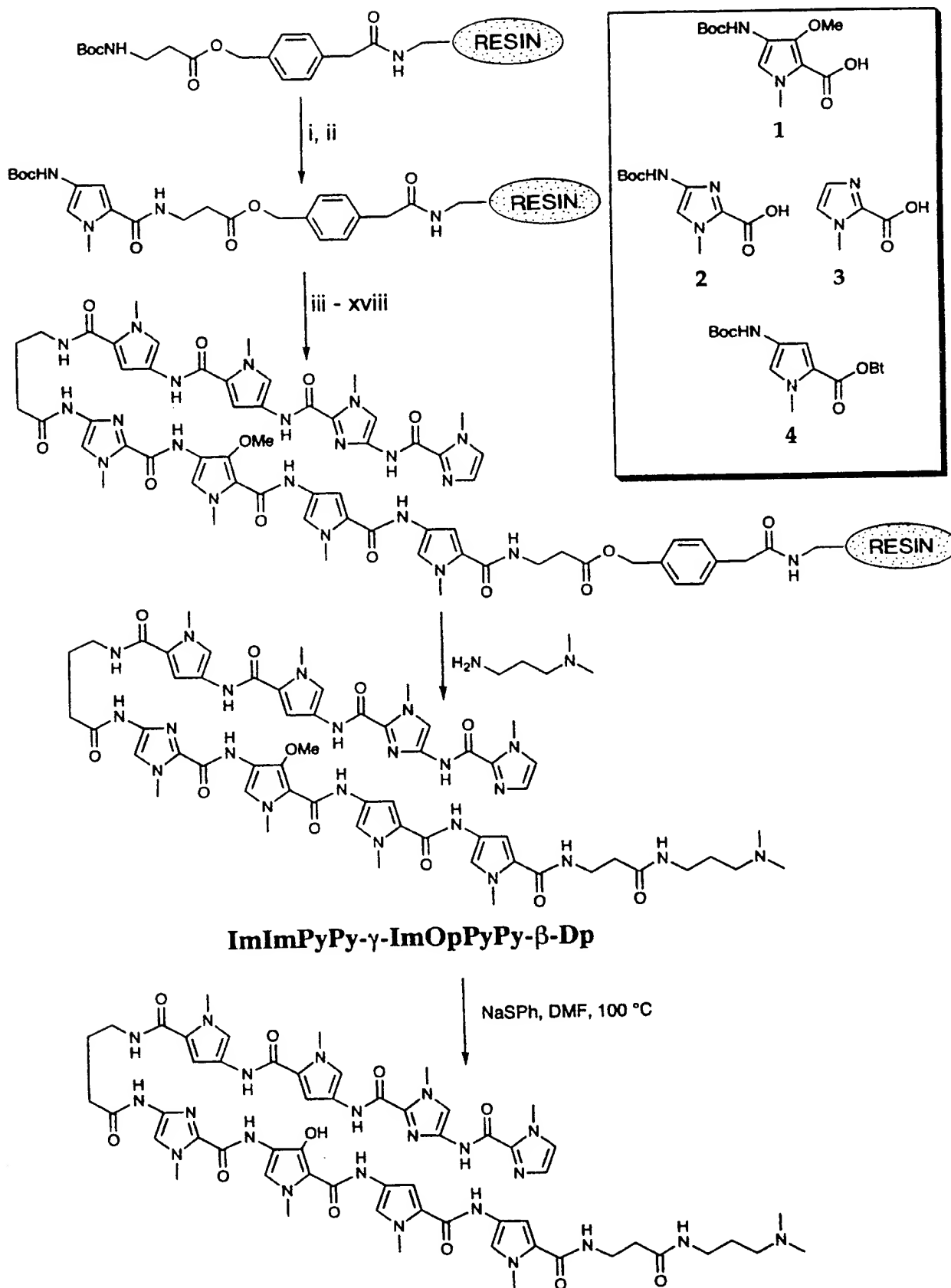
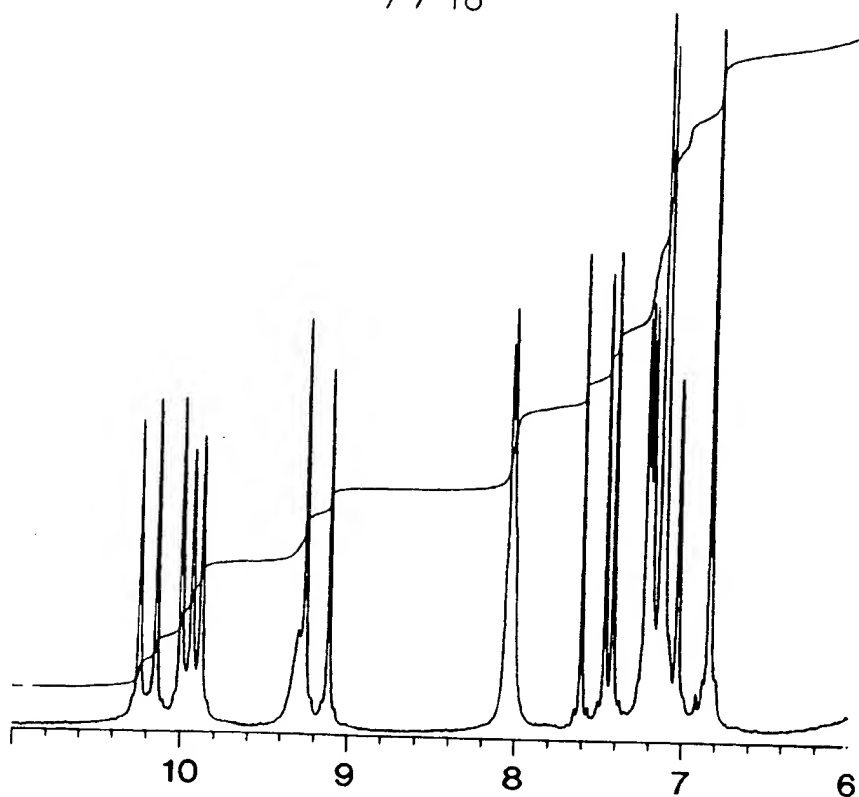
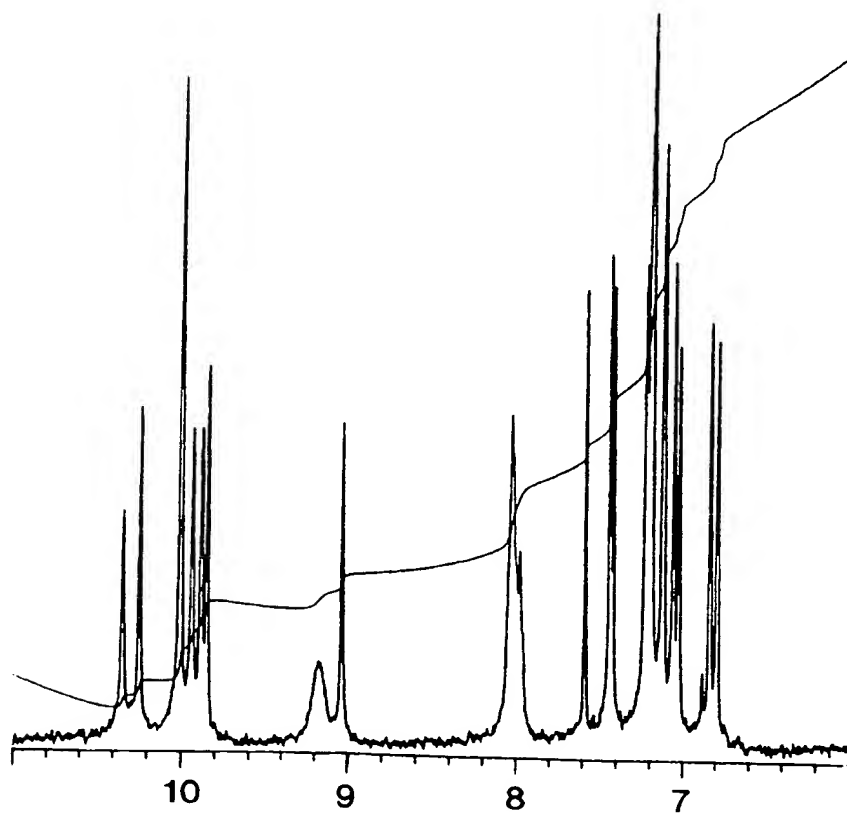
(2) ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- β -Dp

FIG. 6

7 / 18

**FIG. 7A****FIG. 7B**

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

8 / 18

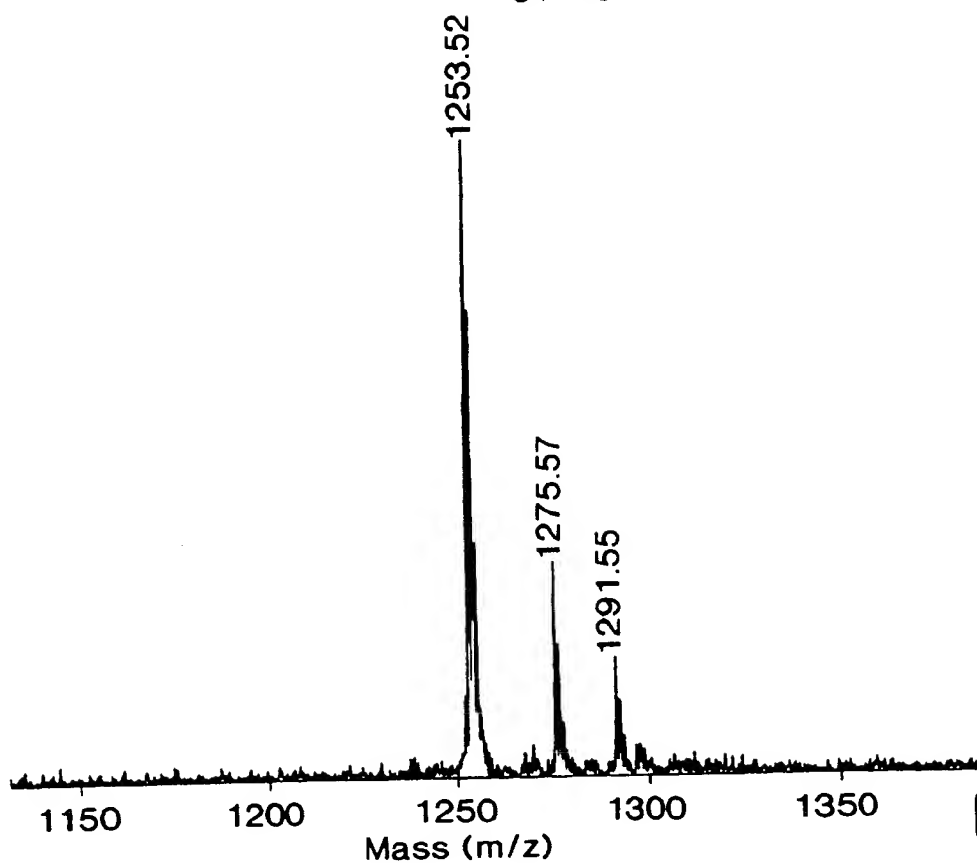


FIG. 8A

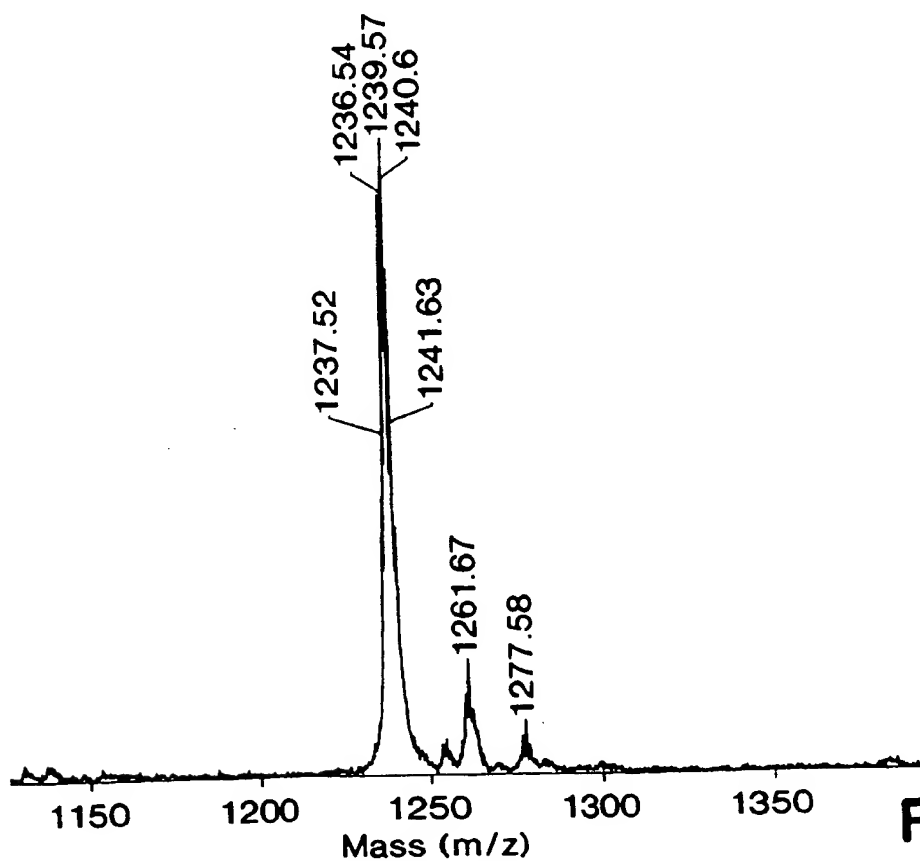
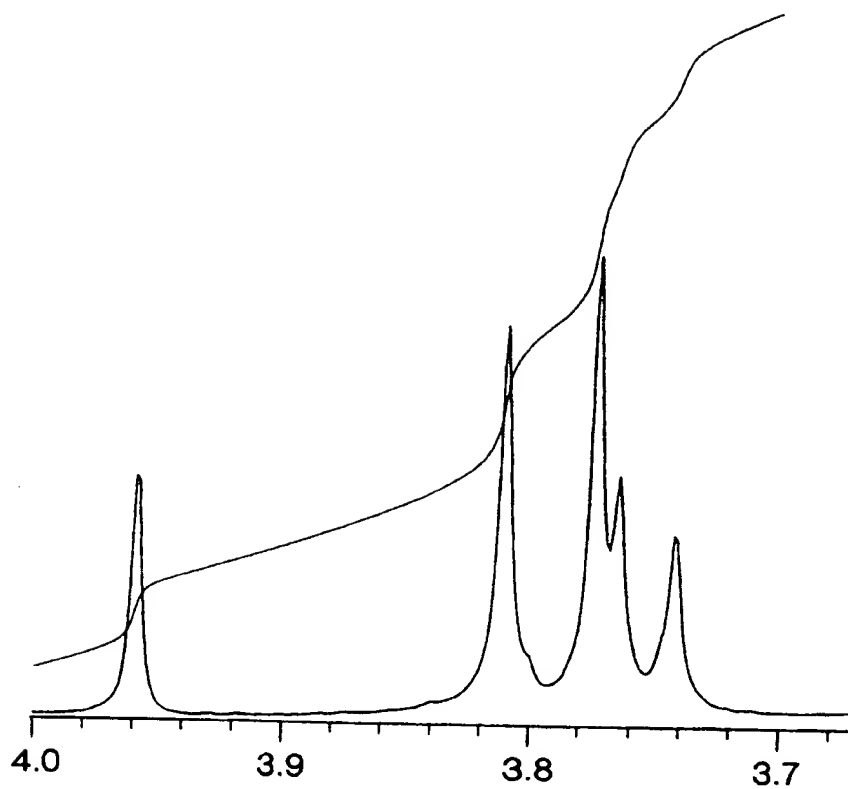
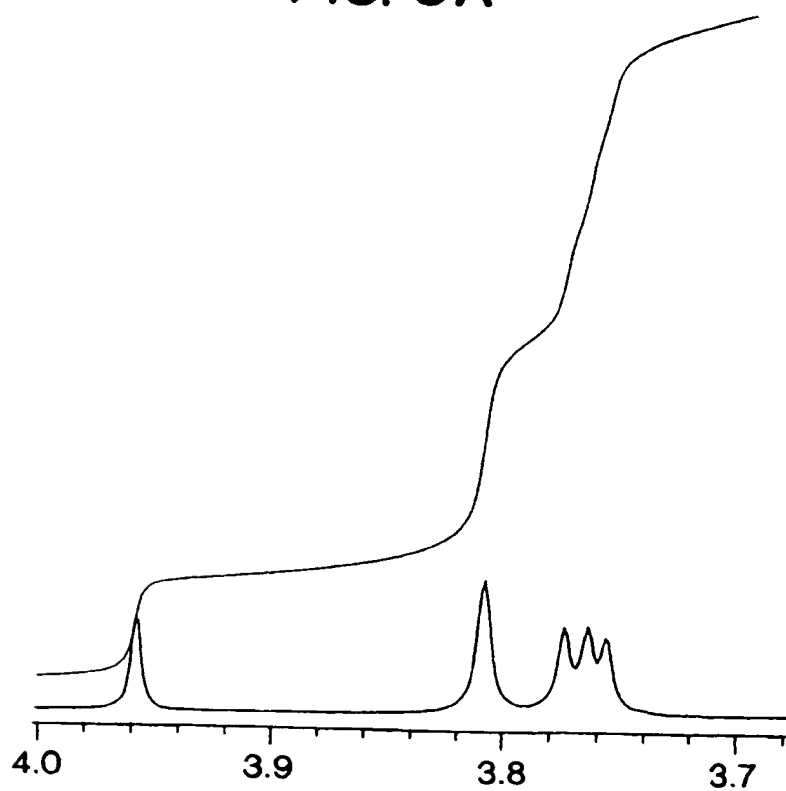


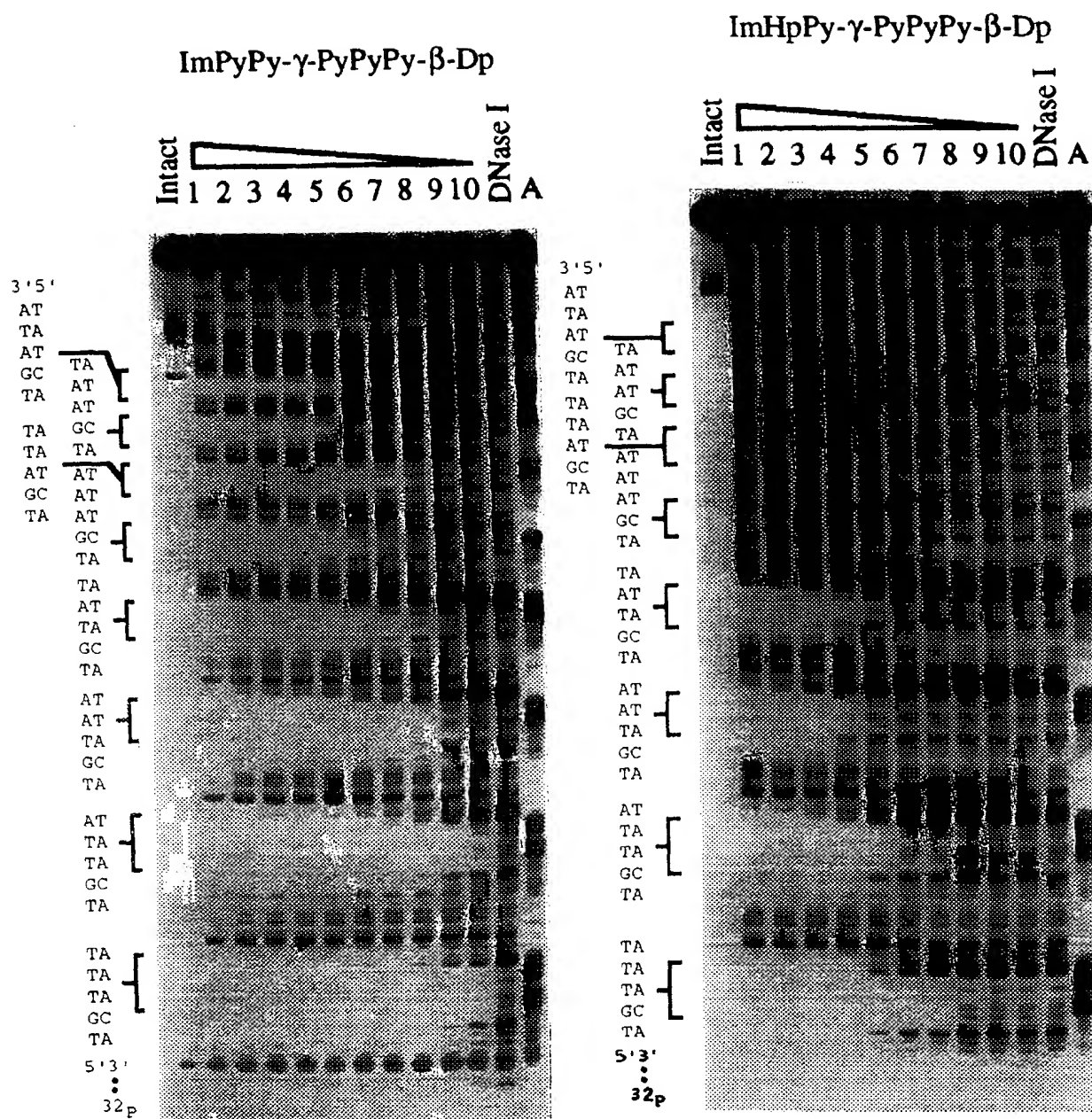
FIG. 8B

9 / 18

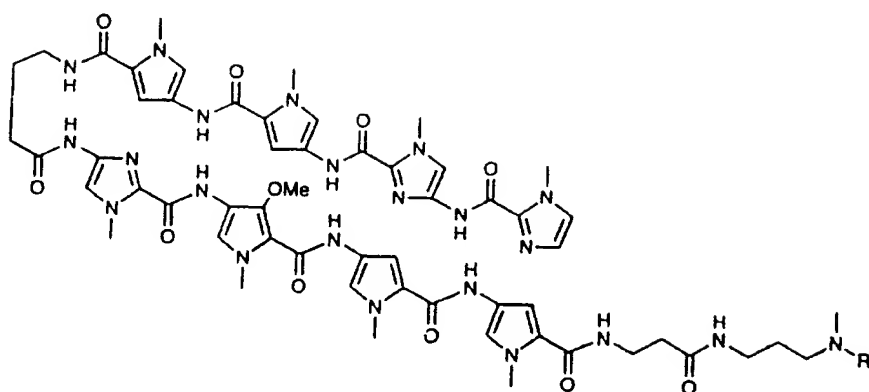
**FIG. 9A****FIG. 9B**

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

10 / 18



11 / 18



R = (CH₂)₃N(CH₃)₂, ImImPyPy-γ-ImOpPyPy-β-Dp-NH₂

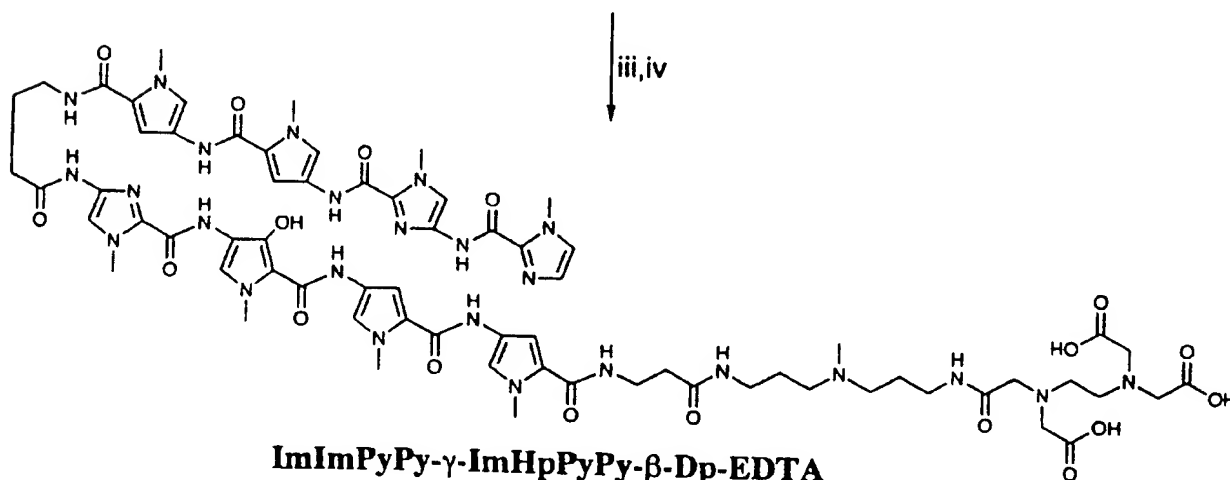
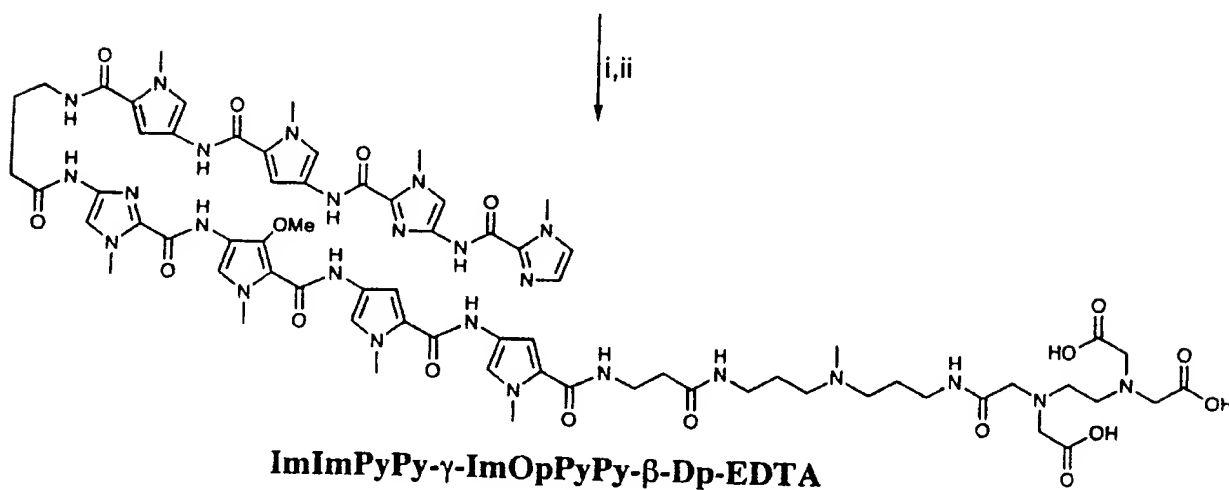


FIG. II

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

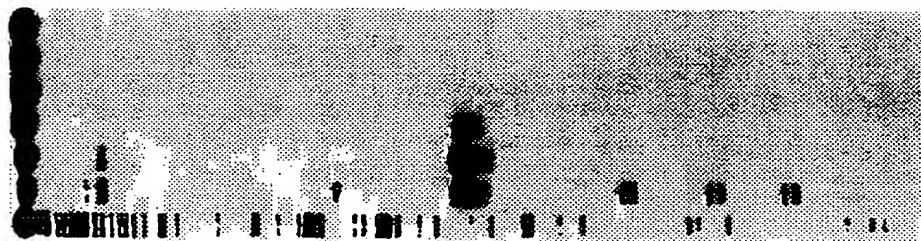
13 / 18

ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- δ -Dp-EDTA-Fe(II)

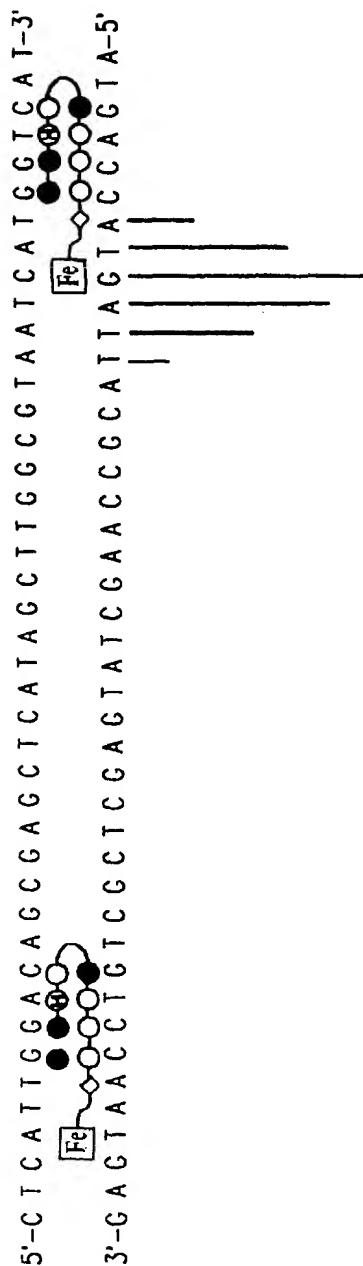
Intact
1 nM
10 nM
100 nM
1.0 μ M
8.5 μ M

A

1 2 3 4 5 6 7



ImImPyPy- γ -ImHpPyPy- δ -Dp-EDTA-Fe(II) 100 nM

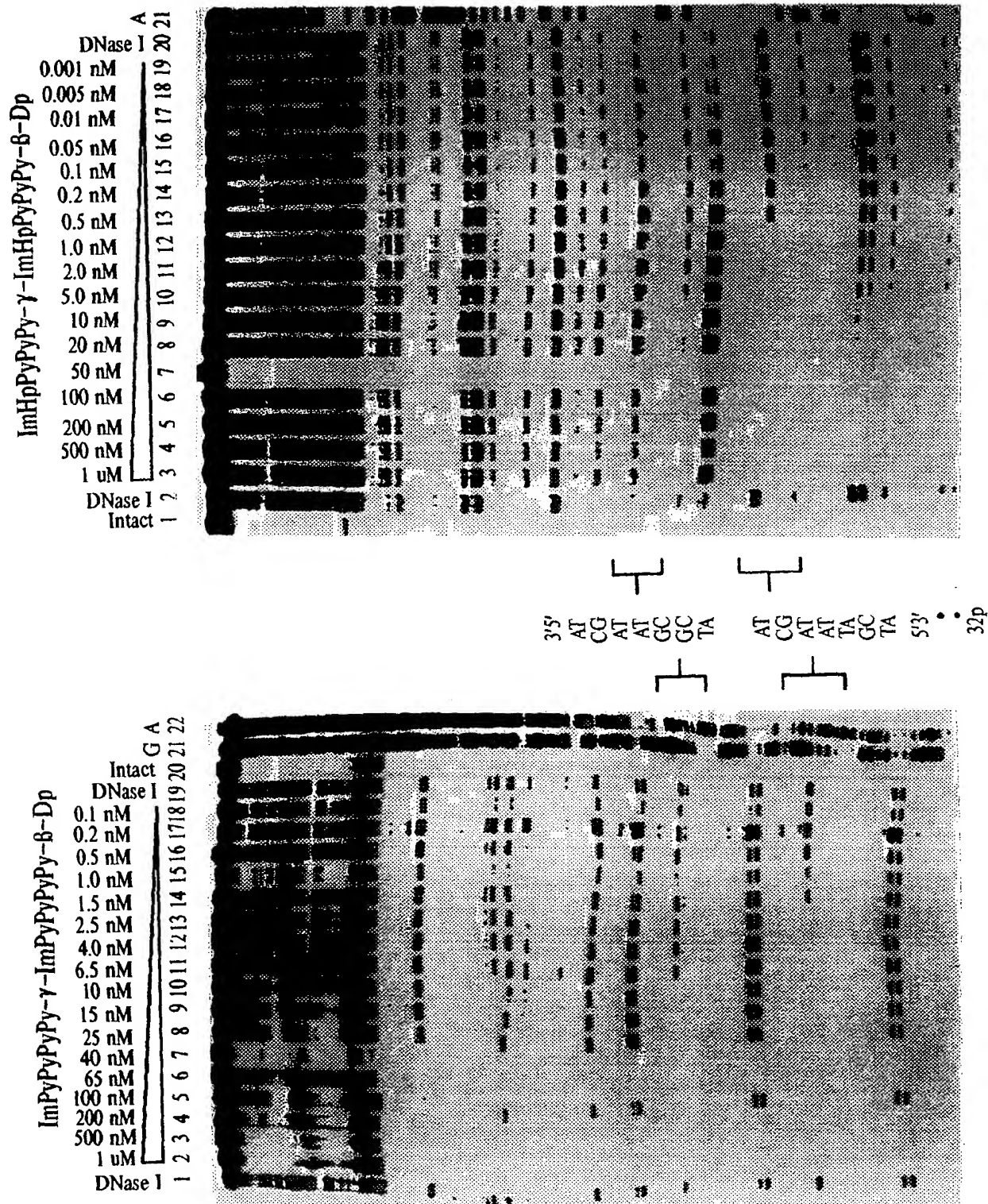


3'5' AT CG TA GC GC TA
AT CG AT GC TA 5'3' ... 32p

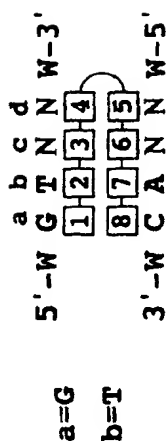
FIG. 12B

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 13



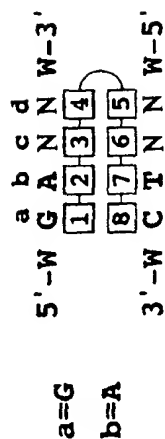
15 / 18



	d=T	d=A	d=G	d=C
c=T	$5'-W G T T T W-3'$ $3'-W C A A W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 1) ImHrpyHr-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T T A W-3'$ $3'-W C A A T W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 2) ImHrpyHr-γ-HrpyPy	$5'-W G T T G W-3'$ $3'-W C A A C W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 3) ImHrpyIm-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T T C W-3'$ $3'-W C A A G W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 4) ImHrpyHr-γ-ImpyPy
c=A	$5'-W G T A T W-3'$ $3'-W C A T A W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 5) ImHrpyHr-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T A A W-3'$ $3'-W C A T T W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 6) ImHrpyHr-γ-HrpyPy	$5'-W G T A G W-3'$ $3'-W C A T C W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 7) ImHrpyIm-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T A C W-3'$ $3'-W C A T G W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 8) ImHrpyHr-γ-ImpyPy
c=G	$5'-W G T G T W-3'$ $3'-W C A C A W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9) ImHrpyIm-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T G A W-3'$ $3'-W C A C T W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 10) ImHrpyHr-γ-HrpyPy	$5'-W G T G G W-3'$ $3'-W C A C C W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 11) ImHrpyIm-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T G C W-3'$ $3'-W C A C G W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 12) ImHrpyHr-γ-ImpyPy
c=C	$5'-W G T C T W-3'$ $3'-W C A G A W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 13) ImHrpyHr-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T C A W-3'$ $3'-W C A G T W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 14) ImHrpyHr-γ-HrpyPy	$5'-W G T C G W-3'$ $3'-W C A G C W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 15) ImHrpyIm-γ-pyImpyPy	$5'-W G T C C W-3'$ $3'-W C A G G W-5'$ 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 16) ImHrpyHr-γ-ImpyPy

FIG. 14

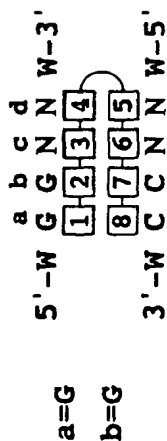
16/18



	d=T	d=A	d=G	d=C
c=T	5'-W G A T T W-3' 3'-W C T A A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 17) ImPyHrPy-γ-PyPyHrPy	5'-W G A T A W-3' 3'-W C T A T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 18) ImPyHrPy-γ-HrPyHrPy	5'-W G A T G W-3' 3'-W C T A C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 19) ImPyHrIm-γ-PyPyHrPy	5'-W G A T C W-3' 3'-W C T A G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 20) ImPyHrPy-γ-ImPyHrPy
c=A	5'-W G A A T W-3' 3'-W C T T A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 21) ImPyHrPy-γ-PyPyHrPy	5'-W G A A A W-3' 3'-W C T T T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 22) ImPyPyPy-γ-HrPyHrPy	5'-W G A A G W-3' 3'-W C T T C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 23) ImPyPyIm-γ-PyPyHrPy	5'-W G A A C W-3' 3'-W C T T G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 24) ImPyPyPy-γ-ImHrPyPy
c=G	5'-W G A G T W-3' 3'-W C T C A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 25) ImPyImHrPy-γ-PyPyHrPy	5'-W G A G A W-3' 3'-W C T C T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 26) ImPyImPy-γ-HrPyHrPy	5'-W G A G G W-3' 3'-W C T C C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 27) ImPyImIm-γ-PyPyHrPy	5'-W G A G C W-3' 3'-W C T C G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 28) ImPyImPy-γ-ImPyHrPy
c=C	5'-W G A C T W-3' 3'-W C T G A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 29) ImPyPyHrPy-γ-PyImHrPy	5'-W G A C A W-3' 3'-W C T G T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 30) ImPyPyPy-γ-HrImHrPy	5'-W G A C G W-3' 3'-W C T G C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 31) ImPyPyIm-γ-PyImHrPy	5'-W G A C C W-3' 3'-W C T G C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 32) ImPyPyPy-γ-ImImHrPy

FIG. 15

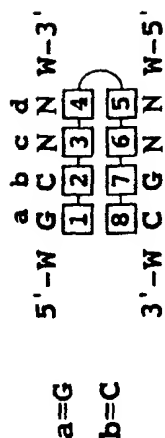
17 / 18



	d=T	d=A	d=G	d=C
c=T	5'-W G G T T W-3' 3'-W C C A A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 33) ImImHp-γ-PyPyPyPy	5'-W G G T A W-3' 3'-W C C A T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 34) ImImHpPy-γ-HpPyPyPy	5'-W G G T G W-3' 3'-W C C A C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 35) ImImHpIm-γ-PyPyPyPy	5'-W G G T C W-3' 3'-W C C A G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 36) ImImHpPy-γ-ImPyPyPy
c=A	5'-W G G A T W-3' 3'-W C C T A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 37) ImImPyHp-γ-PyHpPyPy	5'-W G G A A W-3' 3'-W C C T T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 38) ImImPyPy-γ-HpHpPyPy	5'-W G G A G W-3' 3'-W C C T C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 39) ImImPyIm-γ-PyHpPyPy	5'-W G G A C W-3' 3'-W C C T G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 40) ImImPyPy-γ-ImHpPyPy
c=G	5'-W G G T W-3' 3'-W C C A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 41) ImImImHp-γ-PyPyPyPy	5'-W G G G A W-3' 3'-W C C C T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 42) ImImImPy-γ-HpPyPyPy	5'-W G G G G W-3' 3'-W C C C C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 G1) ImImImIm-γ-PyPyPyPy	5'-W G G G C W-3' 3'-W C C C G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 G2) ImImImPy-γ-ImPyPyPy
c=C	5'-W G G C T W-3' 3'-W C C G A W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 43) ImImPyHp-γ-PyImPyPy	5'-W G G C A W-3' 3'-W C C G T W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 44) ImImPyPy-γ-HpImPyPy	5'-W G G C G W-3' 3'-W C C G C W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 G3) ImImPyIm-γ-PyImPyPy	5'-W G G C C W-3' 3'-W C C G G W-5' 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 G4) ImImPyPy-γ-ImImPyPy

FIG. 16

18 / 18



	d=T	d=A	d=G	d=C
c=T	5'-W G C T T W-3' 3'-W C G A A W-5' 45) ImPyHrPy-γ-PyPyImPy	5'-W G C T A W-3' 3'-W C G A T W-5' 46) ImPyHrPy-γ-HrPyImPy	5'-W G C T G W-3' 3'-W C G A C W-5' 47) ImPyHrIm-γ-PyPyImPy	5'-W G C T C W-3' 3'-W C G A G W-5' 48) ImPyHrPy-γ-ImPyImPy
c=A	5'-W G C A T W-3' 3'-W C G T A W-5' 49) ImPyHrPy-γ-PyHrImPy	5'-W G C A A W-3' 3'-W C G T T W-5' 50) ImPyPyPy-γ-HrPyImPy	5'-W G C A G W-3' 3'-W C G T C W-5' 51) ImPyPyIm-γ-PyHrImPy	5'-W G C A C W-3' 3'-W C G T G W-5' 52) ImPyPyPy-γ-ImHrImPy
c=G	5'-W G C G T W-3' 3'-W C G C A W-5' 53) ImPyImHr-γ-PyPyImPy	5'-W G C G A W-3' 3'-W C G C T W-5' 54) ImPyImPy-γ-HrPyImPy	5'-W G C G G W-3' 3'-W C G C C W-5' 55) ImPyImIm-γ-PyPyImPy	5'-W G C G C W-3' 3'-W C G C G W-5' 56) ImPyImPy-γ-HrImImPy
c=C	5'-W G C C T W-3' 3'-W C G G A W-5' 55) ImPyPyHr-γ-PyImImPy	5'-W G C C A W-3' 3'-W C G G T W-5' 56) ImPyPyPy-γ-HrImImPy	5'-W G C C G W-3' 3'-W C G G C W-5' 57) ImPyPyIm-γ-PyImImPy	5'-W G C C C W-3' 3'-W C G G G W-5' 58) ImPyPyPy-γ-ImImImPy

FIG. 17

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 98/01006

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 C07D207/34 C07D233/90 A61K31/415 C07D403/14 C12Q1/68

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C07D A61K C12Q

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	J. W. TRAUGER ET AL: "Recognition of DNA by designed ligands at subnanomolar concentrations" NATURE, vol. 382, no. 6591, 8 August 1996, pages 559-561, XP002066256 cited in the application see the whole document	13-15,17
X	S.E.SWALLEY ET AL: "Recognition of a 5'-(A,T)GGG(A,T)2-3' sequence in the minor groove of DNA by an eight-ring hairpin polyamide" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 35, 4 September 1996, pages 8198-8206, XP002066377 see page 8198 - page 8202	13-15,17

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

28 May 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

12.06.98

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Voyiazoglou, D

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte Application No

PCT/US 98/01006

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	E. B. BAIRD ET AL: "Solid phase synthesis of polyamides containing imidazole and pyrrole amino acids" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 26, July 1996, pages 6141-6146, XP000674666 cited in the application see page 6141 - page 6142 ---	13-15,17
A	M. E. PARKS ET AL: "Optimization of the hairpin polyamide design for recognition of the minor groove of DNA" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 26, July 1996, pages 6147-6152, XP000674668 see page 6147 - page 6148 ---	13-15,17
A	M. E. PARKS ET AL : "Recognition of 5'-(A,T)GG(AT)2-3' sequences in the minor groove of DNA by hairpin polyamides" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 118, no. 26, July 1996, DC US, pages 6153-6159, XP000674667 see page 6153 - page 6155 ---	13-15,17
A	WO 96 05196 A (PHARMACIA) 22 February 1996 see claim 1 ---	13-15,17
P,X	S. E. SWALLEY ET AL : "Discrimination of 5'-GGGG-3', and 5'-GGCC-3' sequences in the minor groove of DNA by eight-ring hairpin polyamides" JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, vol. 119, no. 30, 30 July 1997, DC US, pages 6953-6961, XP002066260 see page 6959 - page 6961 ---	13-15,17
P,X	W. L. WALKER ET AL: "Estimation of the DNA sequence discriminatory ability of hairpin-linked lexitropsins" PROCEEDINGS OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES, U.S.A., vol. 94, no. 11, May 1997, pages 5634-5639, XP002066261 see table 1 -----	13-15,17

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US 98/01006

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
2. ☒ Claims Nos.: 1-12, 16
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
The claims are so broad that for determining the scope of a meaningful international search due account has been taken of rule 33.3 PCT; special emphasis was put on the following subject-matter: claims 13-15, 17; pages 1-34; examples 1-8 and figures 1-11
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Inte Application No

PCT/US 98/01006

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9605196 A	22-02-1996	AU 689623 B	02-04-1998
		AU 3113695 A	07-03-1996
		CA 2172629 A	22-02-1996
		CN 1131946 A	25-09-1996
		EP 0722446 A	24-07-1996
		FI 961506 A	05-06-1996
		HU 76267 A	28-07-1997
		JP 9504039 T	22-04-1997
		NO 961377 A	30-05-1996
		NZ 290404 A	24-04-1997
		PL 313821 A	22-07-1996
		ZA 9506590 A	18-03-1996

